

# **CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND SPECIFICATIONS FOR REDBIRD RANCH PHASE 2 UNIT 2M-2**

**November 2024**



**DHI Engineering, LLC.**

5419 N. LOOP 1604 EAST  
SAN ANTONIO, TX 78247  
(210) 496-2668 | [dhiengineering.com](http://dhiengineering.com)  
TBPE REG. NO. F-19561

**SECTION 00 0110  
TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

**1.01 Division 00 -- Procurement and Contracting Requirements**

- A. 00 0110 - Table of Contents
- B. 00 0115 - List of Drawing Sheets
- C. 00 1116.10 - Invitation to Bid
- D. 00 2113 - Instructions to Bidders
- E. 00 4100 - Bid Form
- F. 00 4336 - Proposed Subcontractors Form
- G. 00 5200 - Agreement Form
- H. 00 6113.10 - Performance Bond and Labor and Materials Payment Bond
- I. 00 7300.10 - Special Conditions

**SPECIFICATIONS**

**2.01 Division 01 -- General Requirements**

- A. 01 2000 - Price and Payment Procedures
- B. 01 2100 - Allowances
- C. 01 2200 - Unit Prices
- D. 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements
- E. 01 3050.10 - Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
- F. 01 3119.10 - Project Meetings
- G. 01 3216 - Construction Progress Schedule
- H. 01 3217 - Daily Construction Progress Report
- I. 01 3233.10 - Construction Photographs
- J. 01 3553 - Security Procedures
- K. 01 4000 - Quality Requirements
- L. 01 4216 - Definitions
- M. 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls
- N. 01 5100 - Temporary Utilities
- O. 01 5213 - Field Offices and Sheds
- P. 01 5500 - Vehicular Access and Parking
- Q. 01 5713 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control
- R. 01 5713.10 - Spill Response
- S. 01 5813 - Temporary Project Signage
- T. 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements
- U. 01 7123.10 - Field Engineering
- V. 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals

W. 01 7836.10 - Warranties and Bonds

**2.02 Division 02 -- Existing Conditions**

A. 02 3000 - Subsurface Investigation

**2.03 Division 03 -- Concrete**

- A. 03 0100 - Maintenance of Concrete
- B. 03 1000 - Concrete Forming and Accessories
- C. 03 2000 - Concrete Reinforcing
- D. 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete
- E. 03 4100 - Precast Structural Concrete

**2.04 Division 04 -- Masonry**

A. 04 0511 - Masonry Mortaring and Grouting

**2.05 Division 05 -- Metals**

- A. 05 1200.10 - Pipe Railing and Brackets
- B. 05 1200.20 - Metal Work

**2.06 Division 09 -- Finishes**

A. 09 9000 - Painting and Coating

**2.07 Division 31 -- Earthwork**

- A. 31 1000 - Site Clearing
- B. 31 1000.10 - Tree Protection
- C. 31 2200 - Grading
- D. 31 2316 - Excavation
- E. 31 2316.13 - Trenching
- F. 31 2316.14 - Trench Excavation Protection
- G. 31 2316.26 - Rock Removal
- H. 31 2323 - Fill
- I. 31 3213.19 - Lime Soil Stabilization
- J. 31 3700 - Riprap

**2.08 Division 32 -- Exterior Improvements**

- A. 32 1123 - Aggregate Base Courses
- B. 32 1250 - Site Pavement
- C. 32 1313.10 - Concrete Curbs, Gutters and Sidewalks
- D. 32 1723.13 - Painted Pavement Markings
- E. 32 3113 - Chain Link Fences and Gates
- F. 32 9219 - Seeding
- G. 32 9223 - Sodding

**2.09 Division 33 -- Utilities**

A. 33 0273 - Site Concrete Encasement, Cradles, Saddles and Collars

- B. 33 0561 - Concrete Manholes
- C. 33 0513.10 - Site Castings
- D. 33 1416 - Site Water Utility Distribution Piping
- E. 33 3113 - Site Sanitary Sewerage Gravity Piping
- F. 33 4211 - Stormwater Gravity Piping
- G. 33 4213 - Stormwater Culverts

**END OF SECTION**

SECTION 00 0115  
LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

UNIT 2M-2

<u>SHEET NO.</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>
C0.00	COVER SHEET
C1.00	EXISTING DRAINAGE AREA MAP
C1.01	PROPOSED DRAINAGE AREA MAP
C1.02	ULTIMATE DRAINAGE AREA MAP
C1.10	DRAIN A - STA. 1+00.00 - 2+60.00
C1.11	DRAIN A - STA. 2+60.00 - END
C1.12	DRAIN A1 - STA. 1+00.00 TO END
C1.13	DRAIN B - STA. 1+00.00 - 1+79.11
C1.14	DRAIN C - STA. 1+15.00 - 3+44.79
C1.15	DRAIN D - STA. 1+00.00 - 3+40.00
C1.16	DRAIN D - STA. 3+40.00 - 7+40.00
C1.17	DRAIN D - STA. 7+40.00 - 10+77.10
C1.20	DRAINAGE DETAILS
C1.21	DRAINAGE DETAILS
C2.00	BLUEBILL FINCH - STA. 1+00.00 - 3+87.77
C2.01	GOLDEN EAGLE - STA. 10+97.69 - 21+00.00
C2.02	GOLDEN EAGLE - STA. 21+00.00 - 24+08.48
C2.03	ATLANTIC PUFFIN - STA. 1+00.00 - 3+26.48
C2.04	YELLOW BUNTING - STA. 1+00.00 - 5+98.01
C2.05	VIOLET STARLING - STA. 6+51.76 - 9+81.03
C2.06	PINK ROBIN - STA. 1+00.00 - 5+75+85
C2.20	TYPICAL STREET DETAILS
C2.21	TYPICAL STREET DETAILS
C2.22	TYPICAL STREET DETAILS
C3.00	OVERALL SIGNAGE PLAN
C3.01	OVERALL SIGNAGE PLAN
C3.10	TXDOT SIGN MOUNTING DETAILS
C3.11	TXDOT SIGN MOUNTING DETAILS
C4.00	OVERALL UTILITY PLAN
C4.01	OVERALL UTILITY PLAN
C5.00	WATER DISTRIBUTION PLAN
C5.01	WATER DISTRIBUTION PLAN
C5.10	WATER DISTRIBUTION DETAILS
C5.11	WATER DISTRIBUTION DETAILS
C6.00	OVERALL SANITARY SEWER PLAN
C6.01	OVERALL SANITARY SEWER PLAN
C6.02	SANITARY SEWER LINE A - STA. 1+00.00 - 9+50.00
C6.03	SANITARY SEWER LINE A - STA. 9+50.00 - 14+38.13
C6.04	SANITARY SEWER LINE B - STA. 1+00.00 - 8+50.00
C6.05	SANITARY SEWER LINE B - STA. 8+50.00 - 15+00.00
C6.06	SANITARY SEWER LINE B - STA. 15+00.00 - 19+13.93

C6.07	SANITARY SEWER LINE C & SANITARY SEWER LINE D
C6.20	SANITARY SEWER NOTES
C6.21	SANITARY SEWER DETAILS
C7.00	OVERALL GRADING PLAN
C7.01	OVERALL GRADING PLAN
C8.00	STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN
C8.01	STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN
C8.10	STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN DETAILS

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 00 1116.10**  
**INVITATION TO BIDDERS**

Sealed Bids, in duplicate, addressed to Continental Homes of Texas, L.P. on behalf of Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 3 of Medina County, Attention Mrs. Leslie Ostrander, will be received at the office of **Pape Dawson Engineers located at 1672 Independence Drive, Suite 102, New Braunfels, Texas 78132** until **3:30 p.m. local time, 13<sup>th</sup> day of December 2024**, and then **publicly opened and read** via teleconference for “Construction of Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 2M-2, Medina County, Texas. **Electronic bid submittals will not be accepted.** Bids received after the closing time will be returned to bidder unopened.

Scope of Work of the Contract includes the following: streets, water, sanitary sewer, and drainage facilities and general construction work.

A **pre-bid conference** will be held on the **5<sup>th</sup> day of December 2024, at 3:30 p.m. local time**, via teleconference. Please contact Connie Yett, (830) 632-5633, [cyett@pape-dawson.com](mailto:cyett@pape-dawson.com), for information.

Each bid must be accompanied by a Bid Bond or a certified cashier's check, acceptable to the Owner, in an amount not less than five percent (5%) of the total bid amount, as a guarantee that the successful bidder will enter into the contract and execute the bonds on the forms provided, and provide the required insurance certificates within ten (10) days after the date Contract Documents are received by the Contractor.

Copies of the bidding documents are on file at Engineer's office and may be obtained electronically by request to the Engineer via an email to [VLWeynand@DHIEngineering.com](mailto:VLWeynand@DHIEngineering.com). Bidders must email the Engineer in order to be sent a link to view and/or download specifications, plans, soils report and environmental reports for this project. There is NO charge to view or download documents.

Bidding documents may be examined at the above location(s) or may be obtained by prospective bidders or suppliers via an electronic download from the Engineer's website.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids and to waive all defects and irregularities in bidding or bidding process except time of submitting a Bid. The successful Bidder, if any, will be the responsible Bidder which in the Board's judgement will be most advantageous to the District and result in the best and most economical completion of the Project.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 00 2113  
INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS**

1. PREPARATION OF BIDS. Unless otherwise directed in the Invitation to Bidders, each Bid shall be submitted, in duplicate, on the bid forms provided or on photocopies of the forms, in conformity with the requirements of the Invitation to Bidders, these instructions, and the instructions printed on the bid form.

All blanks on the bid form shall be completed, typed, or written in ink, and no change shall be made on the bid form or any other of the Contract Documents. All amounts shall be written in figures, with amounts extended and totaled. Minimum unit prices have been established for certain items shown on the bid. See Paragraph 7 of these instructions. If the bidder chooses not to bid on optional items (if any), "No Bid" shall be entered in the bid space. **Any Bid may be rejected if it contains any omission, erasure, alteration, addition, irregularity of any kind, or items not called for; if it does not submit prices for each of the items in the bid form; if any of the prices are obviously unbalanced; or if it shall, in any manner, fail to conform to the conditions of the Invitation to Bidders and these Instructions.**

The bidder shall sign its Bid in the signature space. If the Bid is made by a partnership or corporation, the name and address of the partnership or corporation shall be shown, together with the names and addresses of the partners or officers. If the Bid is made by an individual, it must be executed by that person; if made by a partnership, it must be executed by one of the partners (and if by a limited partnership, then executed by the general partner); or if made by a corporation, it must be executed in the corporate name by the president or a vice-president (or other corporate officer accompanied by evidence of authority to sign) and the corporate seal must be affixed and attested by the secretary or assistant secretary of the corporation. The corporate address and state of incorporation must be shown below the signature.

When applicable, evidence of authority to conduct business as an out-of-state corporation in the State of Texas shall be provided in accordance with the paragraph entitled QUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS. State Contractor license number, if any, must also be shown.

The Bid and the Bid Security must be enclosed in a sealed envelope, plainly identified on the outside with the contents (i.e. Bid or Bid Security), the bidder's name, and the job name and number, and addressed to the Owner as prescribed in the Invitation to Bidders.

2. CONTRACT DOCUMENTS. The Contract Documents are complementary and must be read together as a whole; what is called for by one is as binding as if called for by all.

Bidders desiring further information or further interpretation of any part of the Contract Documents are hereby obligated to submit a written request to clundberg@pape-dawson.com for such information to Engineer not less than **three (3) calendar days** before the Bid opening. Answers to these requests will be given, in writing, to all bidders as addenda to the Contract, and each addendum will be made a part of the Contract. No explanation or interpretation of the Contract, other than written addenda, shall be binding.

Should a bidder find discrepancies in or omissions from the Contract Documents or should the bidder be in doubt as to any meaning, the bidder is hereby obligated to notify Engineer, so a written addendum may be sent to all bidders. It is the responsibility of each bidder to determine if it has received all addenda, complete files of which will be maintained at the Engineer's office and the office designated to receive the Bids.



Each bidder shall inform itself fully of the construction and labor conditions under which the Work will be performed and shall be presumed to have inspected the Site and to have read and to be thoroughly familiar with the Contract Documents. Failure to do so will not relieve the successful bidder of its obligation to furnish all materials and labor necessary to carry out the provision of the Contract and to complete the Work for the consideration of its Bid.

3. PRE-BID CONFERENCE. A pre-bid conference among Owner, Engineer, prospective bidders, and others will be held to discuss the scope of the Work and to answer questions concerning the Work. No addendum will be issued at this conference, but an addendum will be issued afterwards, if necessary, to answer questions. The pre-bid conference will be held at the time and place shown in the Invitation to bidders.

4. BID SECURITY. Each Bid shall be accompanied by a bid bond or a certified or cashier's check, acceptable to the Owner, in an amount not less than 5 percent of the total amount bid (the "Bid Security"), as a guarantee that the successful bidder will enter into the Contract and execute the Bonds on the forms provided and provide the required insurance certificates within seven (7) days after the date Contract Documents are received by the Contractor. Bid Securities will be returned to all but the three most qualified, responsible bidders within three (3) days after opening of Bids, and the latter's Bid Securities will be returned after complete execution of the Contract. The surety company providing a bid bond must conform to the same requirements for surety companies providing the performance bonds, maintenance bonds and/or payment bonds described below.

5. BONDS. The successful bidder must furnish a Performance Bond, a Maintenance Bond and a Payment Bond, each in the sum of 100 percent of the Contract Price, from a surety company holding a permit from the State of Texas to act as surety. Unless otherwise specified, the cost of proving such Bonds shall be included in the bidders total bid amount. The surety company must have a minimum Best Key Rating of "B+" or better. The surety company, the agency and agent issuing the Bonds must be authorized to issue Bonds in Texas in an amount equal to the total Contract Price and such authorization must be recorded in the files of the Texas Department of Insurance. The Bonds must be executed by a duly appointed representative of the surety company licensed by the State of Texas as a General Lines Agent and such licensing must be recorded in the files of the Texas Department of Insurance. If the surety company does not have such a rating due to the length of time it has existed, the surety company must be eligible to participate in the surety bond guarantee program of the Small Business Administration and must be an approved surety listed in the current U.S. Department of Treasury Circular 570, and must meet all of the rules and regulations of the Treasury Department with respect to performance and payment bonds for federal jobs, including specifically the rules related to underwriting limitation. For contracts over \$100,000, the surety must also hold a certificate of authority from the United States Secretary of Treasury to qualify as a surety on obligations permitted or required under federal law, or have obtained reinsurance for any liability in excess of \$1,000,000 from a reinsurer that is authorized and admitted as a reinsurer in the State of Texas and is the holder of a certificate of authority from the United States Secretary of Treasury to qualify as a surety or reinsurer on obligations permitted or required under federal law. If bidder's proposed surety company, agency or agents do not meet the aforementioned requirements, then Owner may refrain from considering the bidder for Contract award and Owner may require bidder to forfeit the Bid Security.

6. DELIVERY OF BIDS. It is each bidder's responsibility to deliver its Bid and Bid Security to the location named in the Invitation to Bidders before the closing time. The fact that a Bid and Bid Security

were dispatched will not be considered. The Bid and Bid Security must actually be delivered to be considered.

7. “OR EQUAL” SUBMISSIONS. Where materials or equipment are specified by a trade or brand name, it is not the intention of the Owner to discriminate against an equal product of another manufacturer, but to set a definite standard of quality or performance. In preparing his/her proposal, each bidder is expected to include in his/her base Bid the cost of the item so specified. However, in certain Technical Specification sections, manufacturers are listed followed by “or equal.” In certain other Technical Specification sections, manufacturers are listed with “or equal” not included. In those items where “or equal” is not included, it is hereby added and understood to be included, even though not specifically stated in each and every Technical Specification. If a Contractor chooses to submit a suggested “or equal” product in lieu of a product by one of the named manufacturers, Owner will evaluate the item to determine if it is an equal. The Contractor is responsible for providing all data required to evaluate an item submitted as a suggested “or equal.” Owner’s decision on whether an unnamed manufacturer is an “equal” is to be final. No claims for additional cost, time delay, etc. will be accepted if an unnamed manufacturer is submitted by Contractor as a suggested “equal” and Owner decides the item is not “equal.”

Contractor must submit list of items to be submitted as a suggested “or equal” at time of bid submission. No additional suggested “or equal” items will be considered after bid opening.

8. MINIMUM AND EXTRA UNIT PRICE ITEMS. If the approximate quantity and a minimum unit price have been established for items as shown in the Bid, the bidder may not bid a unit price less than the minimum value; however, it may bid an amount greater than the minimum unit price. If no entry is made in the spaces provided, the minimum unit prices shown shall apply. These Extra Unit Price Items are included to facilitate payment for changes and alterations that may be required to complete the Work. The Work, as provided by the Contract Documents, is described in bid items other than Extra Unit Price Items. When additional Work covered by Extra Unit Price Items is performed, payment will be based on the quantity actually constructed and the unit prices entered in the Bid.

9. TIME FOR COMPLETION. Contractor will not be allowed time extensions that are due to (i) inclement weather (not including Force Majeure); (ii) non-availability of equipment or material, when the principal units of Work and tasks on the critical path are not in progress or are not delayed by the event of delay, interference, disruption, or hindrance; (iii) when at least seven (7) hours of available working time remain out of the working day; (iv) while materials are drying and it is possible for the Contractor to enclose the area and use drying devices; (v) when an event of delay, interference, disruption, or hindrance occurs on a day other than a working day or other day when the Contractor had not originally planned to work; (vi) when an event of delay, interference, disruption, or hindrance occurs after the expiration of the time for completion; (vii) to the extent the Contractor could have anticipated or alleviated the impact of the event of delay, interference, disruption, or hindrance through reasonable efforts; (viii) when events of concurrent delay overlap the claimed delay; and/or (ix) when an extension of time is precluded by any other provision of the Contract Documents.

10. QUALIFICATION OF BIDDERS. The apparent most qualified, responsible bidder shall submit to Owner, within **five (5) calendar days** of notification, either i) a fully completed Contractor’s Statement of Qualification or ii) a written statement that the most recently submitted Contractor’s Statement of Qualification is accurate, which statement shall be considered in the award of the Contract. Failure to accurately complete the Contractor’s Statement of Qualification or to submit the Statement will, at

Owner's option, disqualify the bidder from consideration in the award of the Contract. The form of the Contractor's Statement of Qualification is available from Engineer. No other form of Statement of Qualification will be acceptable. Evidence of out-of-state corporation to conduct business in the state in which the Work is to be performed, along with state contractor license number, must also be provided.

11. MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS. Bids may be modified or withdrawn by an appropriate document duly executed (in the manner that a Bid must be executed) and delivered to the place where Bids are to be submitted at any time prior to the opening of Bids. If, within twenty-four hours after Bids are opened, any bidder files a duly signed, written notice with Owner and promptly thereafter demonstrates to the reasonable satisfaction of Owner that there was a material and substantial mistake in the preparation of its Bid, that bidder may withdraw its Bid and the Bid Security will be returned. Thereafter, that bidder will be disqualified from further bidding on the Work to be provided under the Contract Documents.

12. HOUSE BILL 1295. Provision of Texas Ethics Commission Form 1295 ("TEC Form 1295") pursuant to Texas Government Code § 2252.908(the "Interested Party Disclosure Act" or the "Act"): Unless bidder is exempt from such requirements pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2252.908(c)(4), the District may not award the contract to a bidder unless the bidder has provided to the District a completed and signed TEC Form 1295 which has been assigned a certificate number by the Texas Ethics Commission (the "TEC"). Pursuant to the rules prescribed by the TEC, the TEC Form 1295 must be completed online through the TEC's website, assigned a certificate number, printed, signed, and provided to the District. The TEC Form 1295 may accompany the bid or may be submitted separately, but must be provided to the District prior to the award of the contract. For purposes of completing the TEC Form 1295, the entity's name is **Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 3 of Medina County; and the description of goods and services is Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Units 2M-2.** Neither the District nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a TEC Form 1295, and neither have an obligation nor undertake responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to the proper completion of the TEC Form 1295.

13. AWARD OF CONTRACT. Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Bids, including without limitation the rights to reject any or all nonconforming, non-responsive, unbalanced or conditional Bids and to reject the Bid of any bidder if Owner believes that it would not be in the best interest of the Project to make award to that bidder, whether because the Bid is not responsive or the bidder is unqualified or of doubtful financial ability or fails to meet any other pertinent standard or criteria established by Owner. Owner also reserves the right to waive all informalities and defects in bidding, except time of submitting a Bid. Discrepancies between the multiplication of units of Work and unit prices will be resolved in favor of the unit prices. Discrepancies between the indicated sum of any column of figures and the correct sum thereof will be resolved in favor of the correct sum.

In evaluating Bids, Owner will consider, among other things, the qualifications of bidders, whether or not the Bids comply with the prescribed requirements, and such alternates, unit prices and other data, as may be requested in the Bid Form or prior to the Notice of Award. Alternate bid items will not be considered unless requested in the Bid Form.

Owner may consider the qualifications and experience of subcontractors, suppliers, and other persons and organizations proposed for the Work. Owner also may consider the operating costs, maintenance requirements, performance data and guarantees of major items of materials and equipment proposed for incorporation in the Work.

Owner may conduct such investigations as Owner deems necessary to assist in the evaluation of any Bid and to establish the responsibility, qualifications and financial ability of bidders, proposed subcontractors, suppliers and other persons and organizations to perform and furnish the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, to Owner's satisfaction.

**BY SUBMITTING A BID, EACH BIDDER AUTHORIZES OWNER TO PERFORM ALL INVESTIGATIONS INTO THE BIDDERS BACKGROUND, CAPABILITIES, PRIOR EXPERIENCE AND OTHER FACTORS PERTAINING TO BIDDERS PERFORMANCE OF THE WORK, AS OWNER DEEMS NECESSARY IN ITS SOLE DISCRETION, AND FOR THAT PURPOSE, SUBMISSION OF A BID SHALL ACT AS BIDDERS SPECIFIC AUTHORIZATION TO PERSONS AND ENTITIES CONTACTED BY OWNER IN CONNECTION WITH SUCH INVESTIGATIONS ("EVALUATING PARTIES") TO PROVIDE OWNER WITH THE INFORMATION REQUESTED BY OWNER AND TO DISCUSS AND EXPRESS OPINIONS CONCERNING BIDDER. FURTHER, BY SUBMISSION OF A BID, BIDDER AGREES TO FULLY AND FOREVER WAIVE AND RELEASE ANY CLAIM (KNOWN OR UNKNOWN) IT HAS OR MAY HAVE AGAINST THE OWNER, ENGINEER, DEVELOPER, THE EVALUATING PARTIES AND THEIR RESPECTIVE ATTORNEYS, EMPLOYEES, CONSULTANTS, REPRESENTATIVES, AND AGENTS ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE: (I) ADMINISTRATION, EVALUATION, OR RECOMMENDATION (OR LACK THEREOF) OF ANY BID; (II) WAIVER OF ANY REQUIREMENTS UNDER THE BID DOCUMENTS OR THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS; AND (III) ACCEPTANCE OR REJECTION OF ANY BIDS AND AWARD OF THE CONTRACT.**

Owner reserves the right to award the Bid, at Owner's discretion, based on the amount of the Total Base Bid (without including "Extra Unit Price Items" or "alternate" bid items) or on the amount of the Total Amount Bid (including "Extra Unit Price Items" items or "alternate" bid items), or based on any other combination, means or method determined appropriate by Owner.

If the contract is to be awarded, it will be awarded to the responsible bidder whose evaluation by Owner indicates that the award will be most advantageous to the Owner and result in the best and most economical completion of the Work.

If the contract is to be awarded, Owner will give the successful bidder a notice of award within ninety (90) days after the day of the Bid opening.

Within ten (10) calendar days of receipt from the Owner of the Notice of Award, the successful bidder must submit to the Engineer the original Bonds and all information or other items necessary to complete the Contract Documents, including the Schedule of Completion and Contractor's safety program. The successful bidder must return the fully executed Contract Documents to Engineer within seven (7) calendar days of receipt, or Owner may at its sole discretion disqualify the bid and accept another bid and the bidder shall, at Owner's option, forfeit its bid security.

14. TAXES, LICENSES AND FEES. Certain taxes, licenses, fees and other similar items are part of the cost of the Work and it shall be Contractor's responsibility to familiarize itself with these costs and to observe and comply with the Laws and Regulations relating to the same. The prices, sums, rates and other charges set forth in the Contractor's Bid shall cover and include all such costs. Owner is exempt from Texas sales and use taxes pursuant to Texas Tax Code § 151.309 as a political subdivision of the State of Texas. Owner shall provide Contractor, if requested by Contractor in writing, with a completed Texas Sales and Use Tax Exemption Certification as evidence of the applicability of such exemption, as limited by applicable statute. In addition, Contractor and all subcontractors to Contractor (i) shall not include any provision for Texas sales and use taxes with respect to such exempt items in any Bid or the Contract Price, and (ii) shall pass on to the Owner cost savings due to the exempt status of such exempt items.

Contractor's contracts with all subcontractors to Contractor shall include the foregoing provision regarding the exemption from Texas Sales and use taxes. Contractor must pay taxes on items that are not exempt.

15. NUMBER OF SIGNED SETS OF DOCUMENTS. The Contract Documents will be prepared in at least five (5) original sets for signature, one for delivery to the successful bidder. Owner will furnish the successful bidder Plans and Technical Specifications in electronic form and may be obtained from Engineer at Engineer's reproduction rates. The successful bidder shall provide five (5) signed originals of each of the Bonds to be bound with the Contract Documents.

16. WORKER'S COMPENSATION INSURANCE. See section entitled "INSURANCE" in Special Conditions Part A of the Contract.

17. SOILS REPORT. If a soils investigation has been made for this project, the soils report and log of borings is available for bidder's information only. The report is not a warranty of subsurface conditions, nor is it a part of the Contract Documents. Bidders are expected to examine the Site and such reports and then decide for themselves the character of the materials to be encountered.

Owner and Engineer disclaim any responsibility for the accuracy, true location and extent of the surface and subsurface investigations that have been prepared by others. Owner and Engineer further disclaim responsibility for interpretation of that data by bidder, *i.e.* projecting soil-bearing values, rock profiles, soil stability and the presence, level and extent of underground water or underground facilities.

18. LABOR CLASSIFICATION AND MINIMUM WAGE SCALE.

(A) General: Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code provides that any political subdivision of the State of Texas shall ascertain the general prevailing wage rate received by the classes of workers employed on projects similar to this project and shall specify in the call for Bids and in the Contract the minimum wage rates which shall be paid for each type of worker. This statute further provides that the Contractor or subcontractors shall pay, as penalty, to Owner Sixty Dollars (\$60.00) for each worker employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates stipulated in the Contract. Owner is authorized to withhold from the Contractor the amount of this penalty from any payment due under the Contract.

The statute likewise requires that the Contractor and subcontractors keep an accurate record of the names and occupations of all persons employed by them on the construction of the Project and to show the accrual per diem wages paid to each worker. These records are open to the inspection of Owner.

(B) The minimum wage rates that apply to this Contract are specified in the Special Conditions Part A of the Contract. Contractor and subcontractors shall review and ascertain such wage rates and pay at least such minimum rates.

**END**

## SECTION 00 4100

## BID FORM

## THE PROJECT AND THE PARTIES

## 1.01 TO:

- A. Continental Homes of Texas, LP dba D.R. Horton, Inc. on behalf of Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 3 of Medina County (Owner) (Owner)  
c/o Pape- Dawson Engineers, LLC  
Attn: Hayden Fowlkes, P.E.  
1672 Independence Drive, Suite 102 New Braunfels, TX 78132

## 1.02 FOR:

- A. Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 2M-2

## 1.03 DATE: \_\_\_\_\_ (Bidder to enter date)

## 1.04 SUBMITTED BY: (Bidder to enter name and address)

- A. Bidder's Full Name: \_\_\_\_\_
1. Address: \_\_\_\_\_
  2. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_
  3. The Undersigned proposes to furnish all labor, services, materials, tools and necessary equipment for the construction of various improvements and to perform the work required at the locations set out by the Plans and Specifications, in strict accordance with the Contract Documents.
  4. In submitting this Bid, it is understood that this Bid may not be altered or withdrawn for a minimum of 90 calendar days, and that the Owner has reserved the right to reject any and all Bids.
  5. The Undersigned certifies that this Bid is made in good faith, without collusion or connection with any other person, persons, partnership, company, firm, association, or corporation offering Bids on this work, for the following sum or prices to wit:

## 1.05 DECLARATION

- A. The undersigned hereby declares that he has visited the site and has carefully examined the Drawings, Specifications, Contract Documents and Bidding Documents related to the work covered by his Bid.

## 1.06 OFFER

- A. Having examined the Place of The Work and all matters referred to in the Instructions to Bidders and the Contract Documents for the above mentioned project, we, the undersigned, hereby offer to enter into a Contract to perform the Work for the Unit Prices listed in this bid form of:
- B. \_\_\_\_\_ dollars  
(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), in lawful money of the United States of America.
- C. We have included the required security Bid Bond as required by the Instruction to Bidders.
- D. All applicable federal taxes are included and State of Texas taxes are included in the Bid Price.

- E. All Cash and Contingency Allowances described in Section 01 2100 - Allowances are included in the Bid Sum.

**1.07 ACCEPTANCE**

- A. This offer shall be open to acceptance and is irrevocable for ninety days from the bid closing date.
- B. If this bid is accepted by Owner within the time period stated above, we will:
1. Execute the Agreement within seven days of receipt of Notice of Award or acceptance of this bid.
  2. Furnish the required bonds within seven days of receipt of Notice of Award or acceptance of this bid.
  3. Commence work within \_\_\_\_\_ days after written Notice to Proceed or acceptance of this bid. Completion time includes \_\_\_\_\_ days for adverse weather conditions.
- C. If this bid is accepted within the time stated, and we fail to commence the Work or we fail to provide the required Bond(s), the security deposit shall be forfeited as damages to Owner by reason of our failure, limited in amount to the lesser of the face value of the security deposit or the difference between this bid and the bid upon which a Contract is signed.
- D. In the event our bid is not accepted within the time stated above, the required security deposit shall be returned to the undersigned, in accordance with the provisions of the Instructions to Bidders; unless a mutually satisfactory arrangement is made for its retention and validity for an extended period of time.

**1.08 CONTRACT TIME**

- A. If this Bid is accepted, we will complete the Work in [ \_\_\_\_\_ ] calendar days from Notice to Proceed or acceptance of this bid.

**1.09 UNIT PRICES**

- A. Unit Prices for specific portions of the Work as listed at the end of this section:

**1.10 CHANGES TO THE WORK**

- A. When Engineer or Owner establishes that the method of valuation for Changes in the Work will be net cost plus a percentage fee in accordance with General Conditions, our percentage fee will be:
1. \_\_\_\_\_ percent overhead and profit on the net cost of our own Work;
  2. \_\_\_\_\_ percent on the cost of work done by any Subcontractor.
- B. On work deleted from the Contract, our credit to Owner shall be Engineer-approved net cost plus \_\_\_\_\_ of the overhead and profit percentage noted above.

**1.11 ADDENDA**

- A. The following Addenda have been received. The modifications to the Bid Documents noted below have been considered and all costs are included in the Bid Price.
1. Addendum # \_\_\_\_\_ Dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. Addendum # \_\_\_\_\_ Dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. Addendum # \_\_\_\_\_ Dated \_\_\_\_\_.

**1.12 BID FORM SUPPLEMENTS**

- A. The following information is included with Bid submission:
1. Subcontractors - See Section 00 4336 (Proposed Subcontractors Form)

2. Unit Prices - See Section 00 4100 (Bid Form)
- B. The following Supplements are attached to this Bid Form and are considered an integral part of this Bid Form:
  1. Document 00 4100 - Bid Form
  2. Document 00 4336 - Proposed Subcontractors Form: Include the names of all Subcontractors and the portions of the Work they will perform.
- C. Bonds:
  1. Payment and performance bonds running to the Owner pursuant to Article 1.02, INSTRUCTION FOR BIDDERS.
    - a. Premium: \_\_\_\_\_
    - b. Name and Address of Surety:
      - 1) \_\_\_\_\_
      - 2) \_\_\_\_\_
- D. Insurance
  1. Insurance pursuant to Article 1.16, INSTRUCTION FOR BIDDERS (show normal coverage).
    - a. Workmen's Compensation Insurance complying with the laws of the state:
      - 1) Carrier: \_\_\_\_\_
    - b. Employer's Liability Insurance:
      - 1) Carrier: \_\_\_\_\_
      - 2) \$ \_\_\_\_\_
    - c. Comprehensive General Liability and Property Damage Insurance:
      - 1) Carrier: \_\_\_\_\_
      - 2) \$ \_\_\_\_\_
    - d. Comprehensive Automobile Liability and Property Damage Insurance:
      - 1) Carrier: \_\_\_\_\_
      - 2) \$ \_\_\_\_\_

### **1.13 BID FORM SIGNATURE(S)**

- A. The Corporate Seal of

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Bidder - print the full name of your firm)

- B. was hereunto affixed in the presence of:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Authorized signing officer, Title)  
(Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Authorized signing officer, Title)  
(Seal)

**END OF SECTION**



# REDBIRD RANCH PHASE 2

## UNIT 2M-2

### UNIT PRICES

Date \_\_\_\_\_

**BIDDER'S FULL NAME** \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

City, State, Zip \_\_\_\_\_

**CONTRACT DAYS:** \_\_\_\_\_ **BASE BID AMOUNT:** \$ \_\_\_\_\_

1. The Undersigned proposes to furnish all labor, services, materials, tools and necessary equipment for the construction of various improvements and to perform the work required at the locations set out by the Plans and Specifications, in strict accordance with the Contract Documents.
2. In submitting this Bid, it is understood that this Bid may not be altered or withdrawn for a minimum of 90 calendar days, and that the Owner has reserved the right to reject any and all Bids.
3. The Undersigned certifies that this Bid is made in good faith, without collusion or connection with any other person, persons, partnership, company, firm, association, or corporation offering Bids on this work, for the following sum or prices to wit:

**SIGNATURES** \_\_\_\_\_

Authorized Signing Officer, Title \_\_\_\_\_

**SIGNATURES** \_\_\_\_\_

Authorized Signing Officer, Title \_\_\_\_\_

**UNIT 2M-2:**

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	UNIT	QTY	UNIT PRICE	AMOUNT
<b>ONSITE STREETS</b>					
1.	Local A				
	a. 2" Type D HMA (Face of Curb to Face of Curb)	SY	12,267	\$ -	\$
	b. 10" Aggregate Base (1' Behind Back of Curb)	SY	13,642.63	\$ -	\$
	c. 6" Treated Subgrade (1' Behind Back of Curb)	SY	13,642.63	\$ -	\$
2.	Local B				
	a. 2" Type D HMA (Face of Curb to Face of Curb)	SY	1,839.68	\$ -	\$
	b. 2" Type C HMA (Face of Curb to Face of Curb)	SY	1,839.68	\$ -	\$
	c. 16" Aggregate Base (1' Behind Back of Curb)	SY	2,005.63	\$ -	\$
	d. 8" Treated Subgrade (1' Behind Back of Curb)	SY	2,005.60	\$ -	\$
3.	Sidewalk	SY	387	\$ -	\$
4.	Sidewalk Ramps	EA	24	\$ -	\$
5.	7" Concrete Curb	LF	7,890	\$ -	\$
6.	Remove Header Curb & Barricade Post	LF	97	\$ -	\$
7.	Prime Coat (0.2 GAL/SY)	GAL	2,821	\$ -	\$
8.	Track Coat (0.1 GAL/SY)	GAL	1,411	\$ -	\$
9.	Stop Signs (30" X 30") (R1-1)	EA	7	\$ -	\$
10.	9" Street Name Sign	EA	18	\$ -	\$
11.	Type II Blue Raised Pavement Markers	EA	7	\$ -	\$
12.	Lime (30#/SY)	TON	235	\$ -	\$
13.	2-6" SCH80 (CPS) & 2-4" SCH40 PVC (Tele/Cable)	LF	52	\$ -	\$
14.	TPDES	LS	1	\$ -	\$
SUBTOTAL					\$
<b>ONSITE WATER DISTRIBUTION</b>					
1.	Trench Excavation Protection	LF	3,780	\$ -	\$
2.	8" PVC C-900 Class 235, DR 18	LF	3,291	\$ -	\$
3.	¾" Poly-Pex Dual Service (Short) w/ 5/8" Meter	EA	20	\$ -	\$
	1" Poly-Pex Dual Service (Long) w/ 5/8" Meter & 3" SCH 40 Casing	EA	12	\$ -	\$
5.	¾" Poly-Pex Single Service (Short) w/ 5/8" Meter	EA	19	\$ -	\$
	1" Poly-Pex Single Service (Long) w/ 5/8" Meter & 3" SCH 40 Casing	EA	6	\$ -	\$
7.	8" Gate Valve, MJ w/ Valve Box	EA	14	\$ -	\$
8.	Meter Box	EA	89.0	\$ -	\$

9.	Standard Fire Hydrant Assembly	EA	5	\$	-	\$
10.	Ductile Iron Fittings	TN	1	\$	-	\$
11.	Tie into Existing Main	EA	1	\$	-	\$
12.	Hydrostatic Testing	LS	1	\$	-	\$
13.	2" Blowoff (Temporary)	EA	2	\$	-	\$
14.	2" Blowoff (Permanent)	EA	3	\$	-	\$
15.	16" Steel Casing	LF	327	\$	-	\$
16.	Joint Restraint	LS	1	\$	-	\$
17.	2" HDPE DR9 200 PSI	LF	489	\$	-	\$
18.	Test Station	EA	5	\$	-	\$
19.	4" PVC Sleeve	LF	55	\$	-	\$
SUBTOTAL						\$

### ONSITE EARTHWORK, CLEARING, AND SWPPP

1.	Site Clearing	AC	21.7	\$	-	\$
2.	Excavation	CY	11,540	\$	-	\$
3.	Embankment	CY	18,319	\$	-	\$
4.	Rock Filter Dams	LF	121	\$	-	\$
5.	Curb Inlet Gravel Filters	LF	90	\$	-	\$
6.	Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit	SY	227	\$	-	\$
7.	Silt Fence	LF	3,890	\$	-	\$
8.	Concrete Wash Out Pit	EA	1	\$	-	\$
9.	Construction Staging Area	LS	1	\$	-	\$
SUBTOTAL						\$

### ONSITE SANITARY SEWER

1.	8" Sanitary Sewer Pipe (SDR-26)					
	a. 6' to 10' Deep	LF	2,290	\$	-	\$
	b. 10' to 14' Deep	LF	1,069	\$	-	\$
	c. 14' to 18' Deep	LF	285	\$	-	\$
2.	Tie-In To Existing Manholes	EA	1	\$	-	\$
3.	Watertight Ring & Cover Sewer Manholes	EA	14	\$	-	\$
4.	Extra Depth Manhole	VF	70	\$	-	\$
5.	Concrete Manhole Encasement	EA	14	\$	-	\$
6.	6" Sanitary Sewer Pipe, Laterals (SDR-26)	LF	3,551	\$	-	\$
7.	8"X6" Wye	EA	89	\$	-	\$
8.	6" Vertical Stack (SDR-26)	VF	161	\$	-	\$
9.	Sewer Main T.V. Inspection	LF	3,644	\$	-	\$
10.	Trench Excavation Protection	LF	3,644	\$	-	\$
SUBTOTAL						\$

### OVERALL DRAINAGE

1.	24" RCP	LF	459	\$	-	\$
2.	30" RCP	LF	85	\$	-	\$
3.	Hydro-Mulch/Stablize	SY	3,986	\$	-	\$
4.	6" Rock Rubble	SY	205	\$	-	\$
5.	Reinforced Concrete Class 'A'					
	a. 20' Curb Inlet Type I	EA	3	\$	-	\$
	b. 15' Curb Inlet Type I	EA	1	\$	-	\$
	c. 10' Curb Inlet Type I	EA	2	\$	-	\$
	d. 4' x 4' Junction Box	EA	1	\$	-	\$
	e. Headwalls	CY	5.2	\$	-	\$
	f. Baffle Blocks	CY	0.4	\$	-	\$
	g. Concrete Collars	CY	2.5	\$	-	\$
6.	6" Concrete Rip-Rap	SY	10.0	\$	-	\$
7.	Trench Excavation Protection	LF	1,519.00	\$	-	\$
8.	Demolition Existing Outfall Structure	LS	1.00	\$	-	\$
9.	Tie into existing network at Royal Albatross	LS	1.00	\$	-	\$
10.	Channel Excavation	CY	1,360.00	\$	-	\$
SUBTOTAL						\$

**REDBIRD RANCH PHASE 2 UNIT 2M-2 TOTAL \$**

**END OF SECTION**



**REDBIRD RANCH PHASE 2 UNITS 2M-2**

11/2024

**SECTION 00 4336 PROPOSED**

**SUBCONTRACTORS FORM**

**PART 1 PARTICULARS**

**1.01 PROPOSED SUBCONTRACTORS**

- A. Herewith is the list of proposed Subcontractors referenced in the bid submitted by:  
(Bidder) \_\_\_\_\_
- B. To (Owner ): Continental Homes of Texas, L.P. dba D.R. Horton, Inc. on behalf of Redbird  
Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 3 of Medina County
- C. Dated \_\_\_\_\_ and which is an integral part of the Bid Form.

**1.02 LIST OF SUBCONTRACTORS**

- A. The following work is proposed to be performed (or provided) by Subcontractors and  
coordinated by us:

WORK SUBJECT	SUBCONTRACTOR NAME
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 00 5200  
AGREEMENT FORM**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 FORM OF AGREEMENT**

- A. The Agreement to be executed is attached following this page.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 00 7300.10 - Special Conditions  
B. Section 00 7300.10 - Special Conditions Part A  
C. Section 00 7300.10 - Special Conditions Part B

**1.03 MODIFICATIONS TO THE AGREEMENT FORM**

- A. \_\_\_\_\_  
B. \_\_\_\_\_  
C. \_\_\_\_\_

**PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)**

**PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)**

**END OF SECTION**

## CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

This Agreement is made and entered into at San Antonio, Bexar County, Texas, by and between Continental Homes of Texas, L.P., by CHTEX of Texas, Inc., ("Owner") and (CONTRACTOR NAME). ("Contractor")

Owner and Contractor agree as follows:

### ARTICLE 1

#### CONTRACT WORK

1.1 Contractor hereby agrees to make improvements according to those certain Plans and Specifications entitled **Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 2M-2** (the "Plans and Specifications"), on file with both the owner and contractor, and incorporated herein for all purposes the same as if set forth herein on real property owned by Owner (the "Property"), located in Medina County, Texas described as:

#### REDBIRD RANCH PHASE 2 UNIT 2M-2

### ARTICLE 2

#### CONTRACTOR'S OBLIGATIONS

2.1 The Work shall be done strictly according to the Plans and Specifications. Engineer shall not have the power to waive the obligations of this Agreement for the furnishing by Contractor of good material, and of Contractor's performing good and workmanlike work as herein described, and in full accordance with the Plans and Specifications. No failure or omission of Owner to discover, object to or condemn any defective work or material shall release Contractor from the obligations to fully and properly perform the Agreement.

2.2 The Work comprises the completed improvements required by this Agreement and includes all labor necessary to produce such construction, and all materials to be incorporated in such improvements. Unless otherwise specifically provided herein, Contractor shall provide and pay for all labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

2.3 Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work using its best skill and attention, and it shall be solely responsible for all construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under this Agreement.

2.4 Unless otherwise specified, all loss or damage to Contractor arising out of the nature of the Work or from the action of the elements, or from any unforeseen circumstance in the prosecution of the same, or from unusual obstructions or difficulties which may be encountered in the prosecution of the Work, shall be sustained and borne by Contractor at its own cost and expense.

**2.5 Contractor shall take proper means to protect the adjacent or adjoining property or properties in any way encountered, which might be injured or seriously affected by any process of construction to be undertaken under this Agreement, from any damage or injury by reason of said process of construction; and Contractor shall be liable for any and all claims for such damage on account of its failure**

**to fully protect all adjoining property. Contractor agrees to indemnify, save and hold harmless Owner against any claim or claims for damages due to any injury to any adjacent or adjoining property, arising or growing out of the performance of the Agreement; but any such indemnity shall not apply to any claim of any kind arising out of the existence or character of the Work.**

2.6 This Agreement, including the Plans and Specifications, is intended to show clearly all work to be done and material to be furnished hereunder. Where the estimated quantities are shown for the various classes of work to be done and material to be furnished under this Agreement, they are approximate and are to be used only as a basis for estimating the probable cost of the Work and for comparing the proposals offered for the Work.

2.7 At the completion of the Work, Contractor shall remove all its waste materials and rubbish from and about the Property, as well as its tools, construction equipment, machinery and surplus materials.

2.8 During the period the Work is being done, Contractor shall carry the following insurance:

2.8.1 Worker's Compensation; and

2.8.2 General liability in the minimum amount of one million dollars.

Contractor shall provide Owner proof of insurance within seven (7) days of the award of contract.

2.9 Contractor shall be responsible to Owner for the acts and omissions of Contractor's employees, subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons performing any of the Work under a contract with Contractor. Contractor shall at all times exercise reasonable precautions for the safety of employees and others on or near the Work and shall comply with all applicable provisions of Federal, State, and Municipal safety laws and building and construction codes. The safety precautions actually taken and their adequacy shall be the sole responsibility of Contractor, acting at its discretion as an independent contractor.

2.10 The Work shall begin on the effective date of this Agreement and shall be substantially complete on or before the date that is \_\_\_ **calendar days** from the effective date of this Agreement (such date being referred to herein as the "Substantial Completion Deadline"), with additional time for delays as provided for below. The definition of "calendar day" for the purposes of this Agreement shall be the definition set forth in the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction for the City of San Antonio. The term "substantially completed" shall mean that the street and drainage improvements have been completed in a good and workmanlike manner and made suitable for their intended purpose as determined by the issuance of Field Acceptance Letters by Medina County; that water and sewer improvements have been completed in a good and workmanlike manner and made suitable for their intended purpose as determined by the issuance of Field Acceptance Letters by the San Antonio Water System; that finished lots have been completed in good and workmanlike manner and made suitable for their intended purpose as determined by the Owner; and that the work outlined in the Plans and Specifications and bidding documents has been completed in a good and workmanlike manner and made suitable as determined by the Engineer including Plan of Record documentation.

2.11 If Contractor is delayed in completing the Work by any cause except Contractor's neglect or fault, Contractor shall have an additional period of time equal to the length of such delay to complete the Work. The parties agree that the following delays, among others, shall not be attributed to Contractor's neglect or fault: acts of God, inclement weather, casualty loss not caused by Contractor or any of Contractor's employees or subcontractors, untimely payment of draw requests, labor slow-downs, strikes, or changes to the plans or specifications which are requested by Owner or Engineer, with permission of Owner. All time

limits referred to herein shall be of the essence, and Contractor shall expedite the Work and use its best efforts to complete the Work within the time prescribed herein. If Contractor is delayed in completing the Work and desires to extend the deadline for substantial completion, then Contractor shall give Owner written notice of the cause of such delay and the number of days the deadline will be extended. **The notice must be given within five (5) days of the occurrence of the event which is the cause.** Inclement weather shall be defined for purposes of this paragraph as precipitation or condition resulting there from that prevents the prosecution of Work for more than seven hours in a day. Contractor shall notify Owner in writing, upon request, of the number of hours its workers performed on the Work for each calendar day during the term of this Agreement.

2.12 Contractor further agrees that Owner may make such changes and alterations as Owner may see fit, in the line, grade, form, dimensions, plans or materials for the work herein contemplated, or any part thereof, either before or after the beginning of the Work, without affecting the validity of this Agreement, subject to provisions contained in Article 4-Changes to the Work.

2.13 Neither the failure on the part of Contractor to understand the intent of the Plans and Specifications nor the unawareness of the contents thereof shall be accepted as a valid reason for the omission of, or inferior character of the Work. Such misunderstanding or unawareness shall not justify claim for extra cost.

2.14 During the progress of the Work and within one year of the date of preliminary field acceptance by Owner and all applicable governing utility and governmental authorities, Contractor shall, within five days of written notice from Owner, make proper investigation and shall initiate the remedy of any defects found as the result of defective materials or workmanship of the Contractor or noncompliance with the Plans and Specifications.

2.15 It is understood and agreed that Contractor has, by careful examination, satisfied itself as to the nature and location of the Work, the conformation of the ground, the character, quality, and quantity of the materials to be encountered, the character of equipment and facilities needed preliminary to and during the prosecution of the Work, the general and local conditions, and all other matters which can in any way affect the Work under this Agreement. No verbal agreement or conversation with any officer, agent or employee of Owner either before or after the execution of this Agreement shall affect or modify any of the terms or obligations herein contained.

2.16 Contractor agrees that it will indemnify and save Owner harmless from all claims growing out of the lawful demands of subcontractors or subcontractors' laborers, workmen, mechanics, material-men and furnishers of machinery and parts thereof, equipment, power tools, and all supplies, including commissary, incurred in the furtherance of the performance of this Agreement. When so desired by Owner, Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence that all obligations of the nature hereinabove designated have been paid, discharged or waived.

2.17 Contractor agrees that it will, as part of this contract, obtain and provide to Owner all interim and final field inspection approvals, all interim and final completion approvals or certificates by governing utility and governmental authorities in writing, including Preliminary Field Acceptance upon substantial completion as well as Final Acceptance following the applicable warranty period. Contractor agrees to timely provide plan of record construction documents within **30 calendar days** of substantial completion of the project.



### ARTICLE 3

#### PAYMENT TO CONTRACTOR

3.1 In consideration of the performance of the Work, Owner agrees to pay Contractor the sum of (CONTRACT PRICE) (\$ ) (the "Contract Price") subject to the Unit Price Bid Proposal which is attached hereto as **Exhibit "B"** and incorporated for all purposes.

3.2 On or before the 10th day of each month, Contractor shall prepare and submit to Engineer for approval or modification, a statement showing as completely as practicable the total value of the Work done by Contractor up to and including the last day of the preceding month; said statement shall also include the value of all materials delivered on the site of the Work that are to be fabricated into the Work. Owner shall then pay Contractor on or before the last day of the current month the total amount of the approved statement, less ten percent (10%) of the amount thereof, which ten percent (10%) shall be retained until final payment, and further less all previous payments and all further sums that may be retained by Owner under the terms of this Agreement. The contractor shall be required provide the owner with one complete set of all Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan inspection reports, prior to receiving final payment for the project.

3.3 Engineer will be Owner's representative during Construction. Engineer shall make periodic visits to the site to familiarize itself generally with the progress of the executed Work and to determine if the Work generally meets the essential performance and design features and the technical and functional engineering requirements of the Plans and Specification. Engineer shall review Contractor's applications for payment and supporting data, determine the amount owed to Contractor and approve payment to Contractor in such amounts. Engineer shall make initial determinations regarding all claims, disputes or other matters in question between Contractor and Owner relative to the execution or progress of the Work or in the interpretation of the Plans and Specifications.

3.4 Per the Texas Property Code, Owner shall retain ten percent (10%) of the Contract Price and shall pay the ten percent (10%) retainage to Contractor no earlier than thirty (30) days nor later than thirty-five (35) days after substantial completion of the Work on the condition that Contractor give Owner a written statement certifying that all material suppliers and subcontractors have been paid and no liens have been filed.

3.5 If Owner receives notice from a laborer or material-man on unpaid bills that could become a lien on the Property then Owner shall have the right to subtract from the next application for payment the amount claimed in the notice unless the unpaid bill is otherwise paid or settled.

### ARTICLE 4

#### CHANGES TO THE WORK

4.1 Without invalidating the Agreement, Owner may, at any time or from time to time, order additions, deletions or revisions in the Work; these will be authorized by a written Change Order executed by Owner, Contractor and Engineer. Upon receipt of any such document, Contractor shall promptly proceed with the Work involved which will be performed under the applicable conditions of the Plans and Specifications. If Owner and Contractor are unable to agree as to the extent, if any, of an increase or decrease in the Contract Price or an extension or shortening of the contract time that should be allowed as a result of a Change Order, then such matter may be submitted to arbitration but Contractor, in no event, shall not stop the progress of the Work.

4.2 Engineer may authorize minor changes in the Work not inconsistent with the overall intent of the Plans and Specifications and not involving an increase in the Contract Price. If Contractor believes that any

minor change or alteration authorized by Engineer involved extra work and entitled it to an increase in the Contract Price, Contractor shall make written request to Engineer for a written Change Order. In such case, Contractor by copy of its communication to Engineer or otherwise in writing shall advise Owner of its request to Engineer for a written Change Order and that the Work involved may result in an increase in the Contract Price.

## ARTICLE 5

### REMEDIES OF OWNER

5.1 In case Contractor should abandon and fail or refuse to resume the Work within ten (10) days after written notification from Owner, or Engineer, or if Contractor fails to comply with the orders of Engineer, when such orders are consistent with the Plans and Specification, then, and in that case, where performance and payment bonds exist, the Sureties on these bonds shall be notified in writing and directed to complete the Work, and a copy of said notice shall be delivered to Contractor. Where there is no performance bond provided or in case the Surety should fail to commence compliance with the notice for completion hereinbefore provided for, within ten (10) days after service of such notice, then Owner may provide for completion of the Work in either of the following elective manners:

5.1.1 Owner may thereupon employ such force of men and use such machinery, equipment, tools, materials and supplies as Owner may deem necessary to complete the Work and charge the expense of such labor, machinery, equipment, tools, materials and supplies to Contractor, and the expense so charged shall be deducted and paid by Owner out of such moneys as may be due, or that may thereafter at any time become due to Contractor under and by virtue of this Agreement. In case such expense is less than the sum which would have been payable under this Agreement, if the same had been completed by Contractor, then Contractor shall receive the difference. In case such expense is greater than the sum which would have been payable under this Agreement, if the same had been completed by said Contractor, then Contractor and/or its Surety, if any, shall pay the amount of such excess to Owner; or

5.1.2 Owner under sealed bids, after five (5) days' notice published one or more times in a newspaper having general circulation in the county of the location of the Work, may let the contract for the completion of the Work under substantially the same terms and conditions which are provided in this Agreement. In case any increase in cost to Owner under the new contract as compared to what would have been the cost under this Agreement, such increase shall be charged to Contractor and the Surety, if any, shall be and remain bound therefore. However, should the cost to complete any such new contract prove to be less than what would have been the cost to complete under this Agreement, Contractor and/or its Surety, if any, shall be credited there with.

5.2 It is mutually agreed by Contractor and Owner that since time is of the essence with respect to Contractor's substantial completion of the Work by the Substantial Completion Deadline, in the case of a failure on the part of Contractor to substantially complete the Work by the Substantial Completion Deadline (subject only to permissible delays properly documented as set forth in Section 2.11 above), Owner will suffer monetary loss and damages; and Contractor and Owner agree that the amount of said damages, inclusive of expenses for loss of revenue and lost or delayed opportunities, will be difficult if not impossible to ascertain with any degree of certainty and/or to prove. Therefore it is hereby mutually agreed by the parties that in addition to the other remedies afforded to Owner herein, Owner shall be entitled to recover from Contractor, as liquidated damages and not as a penalty, the sum of \$1,000.00 per day for each calendar day beyond the Substantial Completion Deadline that Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work, such per diem damages being herein agreed to by Contractor and Owner as a reasonable estimate of the amount of damages which Owner will sustain for Contractor's failure to substantially complete the Work by the Substantial Completion Deadline; and Contractor hereby agrees that such liquidated damages shall be deducted from any monies due or that may become due to Contractor, and if said monies are insufficient to

cover such damages, then Contractor shall pay the amount of the difference within ten (10) business days from Owner's written demand.

5.3 Pursuit of any of the remedies provided for in this Agreement shall not preclude pursuit of any of the other remedies herein provided or any other remedies by law, nor shall pursuit of any remedy herein provided constitute a forfeiture or waiver of any damages to Owner by the violation of any of the terms and covenants herein contained.

## ARTICLE 6

### TERMINATION BY CONTRACTOR

6.1 Contractor may terminate this Agreement if Owner unduly interferes or delays the work or unjustifiably refuses to pay Contractor. Before terminating the Agreement, Contractor must give Owner written notice of Owner's actions giving rise to Contractor's termination and Owner fails to cease and desist from such action or inaction.

### MISCELLANEOUS

1. No Assignability. Contractor shall not assign the Agreement without prior written consent of Owner.

2. Notices. Any notice, request, instruction or other document to be given under this Agreement after the date hereof by any party hereto to any other party shall be in writing and shall be delivered personally or sent by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, to the addresses shown on the signature page of this Agreement or the bond or to such other address or person as any party may designate by written notice to the other.

3. Entire Agreement. The Agreement, the Plans and Specifications, and all of the Exhibits attached hereto constitute the entire Agreement and shall supersede all prior agreements and understandings, both written and oral, between the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof, and no party shall be liable or bound to the other in any manner by any warranties or representations except as specifically set forth herein or expressly required to be made or delivered pursuant hereto.

4. Successors. The terms and conditions of this Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the respective heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns of the parties hereto. Nothing in the Agreement, express or implied, is intended to confer upon any party other than the parties hereto and their respective successors and assigns any rights, remedies, obligations or liabilities under or by reason of such Agreement, except as otherwise expressly provided herein.

5. Identical Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall for all purposes be deemed to be an original and all of which shall constitute the same instrument, but only one of which need be produced.

6. Headings. Headings of the paragraphs of this Agreement are inserted for convenience only and shall not be deemed to constitute part of this Agreement or to effect the construction hereof.

7. Use of "herein". Etc.. As used in this Agreement the words "herein," "hereof" and "hereunder" and other words of similar import refer to this Agreement as a whole and not to any particular paragraph, subparagraph or other subdivision.

8. Modification and Waiver. Any of the terms or conditions to this Agreement may be waived

at any time by the party which is entitled to the benefits thereof. No supplement, modification or waiver of this Agreement shall be binding unless executed in writing by all of the parties hereto. No waiver of any of the provisions of this Agreement shall be deemed or shall constitute a waiver of any other provision hereof (whether or not similar), nor shall such waiver constitute a continuing waiver.

9. Schedules, Etc. All statements contained in any exhibit, schedule, certificate or other instrument delivered by or on behalf of the parties hereto, or in connection with the transactions contemplated herein, are an integral part of this Agreement and shall be incorporated herein and deemed representations and warranties hereunder.

10. Governing Law. The parties hereby agree that this Agreement has been executed and delivered in the State of Texas and shall be construed, enforced and governed by the laws thereof.

11. Further Assurances. The parties hereto shall do and perform or cause to be done and performed all such further acts and things and shall execute and deliver all such other agreements, certificates, instruments or documents as the other party hereto may reasonably request in order to carry out the intent and purposes of this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.

12. Attorney's Fees. Should either party employ an attorney or attorneys to enforce any of the provisions hereof, or to recover damages for the breach of this Agreement, the non-prevailing party in any final judgment agrees to pay the other party all reasonable costs, charges and expenses, including attorneys' fees, expended or incurred in connection therewith.

13. Severability. In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Agreement shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any of the provisions hereof, and this Agreement shall be construed as if such invalid, illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein.

14. **Effective date of the Agreement shall be the date set forth above the signatures of the parties to this Agreement.**

15. **Contractor to notify Continental Homes of Texas, L.P. before any export of materials from the site.**

16. **Contractor agrees to perform earthwork in accordance with the engineer's grading plan. Earthwork has been bid as a lump sum. Additional materials to achieve finished grades or disposal of leftover material are non-pay items.**

17. **All material imported from off-site sources must be tested and meet DR Horton approval before import and placement.**

18. **Contractor shall coordinate with other site contractors in order to provide a completed project in accordance with the plans and schedule, including but not limited to dry utility contractors and retaining wall contractors.**

19. **All material imported from off-site sources must be tested and meet DR Horton approval before import and placement.**

SIGNATURE PAGE TO FOLLOW

EFFECTIVE this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2022.

**OWNER:**

**Continental Homes of Texas, L.P.  
a Texas limited partnership**

By: CHTEX of Texas, Inc. A Delaware Corporation,  
its sole general partner

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Leslie K. Ostrander  
Assistant Secretary  
5419 N. Loop 1604 E  
San Antonio, Texas 78247

**CONTRACTOR:**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

**EXHIBITS:**

Exhibit "A" – Bid Tab  
Exhibit "B" – Bid Proposal  
Exhibit "C" – Signed Instructions to Bidders  
Exhibit "D" – Construction/Project Schedule

**ATTACHMENT A TO AGREEMENT**

Notwithstanding any other items, conditions, or provisions of the General or Special Conditions or any other provisions of the Contract Documents to the contrary, Continental Homes of Texas, L.P. dba D.R. Horton, Inc. (Owner) on behalf of Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 3 of Medina County (District) shall be deemed and considered as Owner for all purposes under the Contract Documents, except as provided herein.

- I. Continental Homes of Texas, L.P. shall be considered the “Owner” for purposes of approving requests for and making payments to the Contractor of all or any portion of the Contract Price and for paying all damages, if any, that might ever be due or payable by the District, including any costs associated with any Change Orders to the Contract. After submission to and approval by the District and by Developer of the invoices, certificates and supporting documentation in connection with a request for payment, the Contractor agrees to and shall look solely to Developer for payment of such invoices. Developer agrees to pay Contractor’s invoices for work performed, in accordance with the terms of the Contract Documents, in an aggregate amount not to exceed the Contract Price, plus Change Orders and Extra Work approved by the Board of Directors of the District and by Developer. Failure by Developer to make such payments to the Contractor shall constitute a default by Owner and shall entitle the Contractor to all rights and remedies arising under the Contract Documents for a default in payment of sums due the Contractor pursuant to the Contract Documents; provided, however, the District shall have no obligation for payment of sums due or to become due under the approved invoices or any part of the Contract Price.
- II. If District is not the owner in fee title of the Site, Developer shall also be considered the “Owner” for purposes of satisfying the Owner’s obligation to provide to the Contractor the Site, rights-of-way for access to and from the Site, and such other lands that are designated for use of the Contractor in the Plans, and Developer hereby agrees to provide the Site, rights-of-way for access to and from the Site, and such other lands that are designated for use of the Contractor in the Plans, all in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- III. **IN CONSIDERATION FOR PAYMENT AND ACCESS PROVISIONS DESCRIBED ABOVE, DEVELOPER, ITS OFFICERS, DIRECTORS AND EMPLOYEES, SHALL BE INCLUDED AS INDEMNIFIED PARTIES AND ADDITIONAL INSURED AND SUBJECT TO ALL RIGHTS AFFORDED THEREBY UNDER THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, IN LAW AND IN EQUITY.** Contractor shall cause Developer, its officers, directors and employees, to be named as additional insureds to the same extent and in the same manner as Contractor is required to cause the District to be named as an additional insured pursuant to the Contract Documents. Contractor shall furnish the Developer with certificates of insurance showing Contractor’s procurement of such required insurance.

Developer reserves the right to assign its obligations hereunder to District, subject to written acceptance thereof by the District. Developer further reserves the right to assign its obligations hereunder to a third party, subject to written consent of the District and the Contractor, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, delayed or conditioned. A copy of any such assignment and the acceptance or consent thereof, as applicable, by the District shall be provided to the Contractor. Thereafter the assignee party shall be obligated to make all payments thereafter becoming due to the Contractor pursuant to this Contract and the obligations of Developer contained in the first paragraph of these Special Conditions shall terminate.

For purposes of convenient administration of this Contract, District may from time to time make payments due the Contractor pursuant to this Contract from funds available to the District; provided, however, no such payment by District will obligate District to make further payments due the Contractor or pursuant to this Contract unless and until District has accepted an assignment of Developer's obligations hereunder and a copy of the assignment and the District's acceptance is delivered to the Contractor, whereupon the District shall become liable for payment to the extent of the assignment.

If District breaches its obligations in any respect under the Contract Documents, before exercising any remedy the Contractor shall give written notice to Developer at the address below specifying the breach and the steps necessary to cure the breach and Developer shall have the right and power, within thirty (30) days after receipt of such notice, to cure or cause the breach to be cured, if it so elects, before Contractor exercises any of its remedies under the Contract Documents.

5419 N LOOP 1604 E, SAN ANTONIO, TEXAS 78247

District, Developer and Contractor hereby agree and acknowledge this Attachment A of the Agreement.

CONTINENTAL HOMES OF TEXAS, L.P.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

(CONTRACTOR'S NAME)

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

REDBIRD RANCH FRESH WATER SUPPLY DISTRICT NO. 3 OF  
MEDINA COUNTY

By:\_\_\_\_\_

Name:\_\_\_\_\_

Title:\_\_\_\_\_

Date:\_\_\_\_\_



**PROHIBITION ON BOYCOTTING ISRAEL AND CONTRACTING WITH TERRORIST  
ORGANIZATIONS VERIFICATION**

This verification is hereby incorporated into the terms of the contract by and between  
CONTINENTAL HOMES OF TEXAS, L.P. and \_\_\_\_\_  
entered into this the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2021.

**1.01** \_\_\_\_\_, in conjunction with the execution of the above referenced contract and  
in accordance with Chapter 2270 of the Texas Government Code, effective Sept. 1 2017, does  
hereby agree, confirm, and verify that it:

- A. Does not Boycott Israel; and
- B. Will not Boycott Israel during the term of the contract

“Boycott Israel” has the meaning given to it in Chapter 808 of Subtitle A, Title 8 of the Texas  
Government Code. As of the effective date of the statute, the term means “refusing to deal  
with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to  
penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or  
with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not  
include an action make for ordinary business purposes.”

**1.02** Contractor hereby certifies that it is not a entity that contracts with or provides supplies or  
services to a foreign terrorist organization, as defined by Section 2252.151(2), Texas  
Government Code, and has not been identified as a company known to have contracts with or  
provide supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization as identified on a list prepared  
and maintained under Section 806.051, 807.051, or 2252.153, Texas Government Code.

**1.03** Contractor hereby acknowledges and agrees that this verification is a material term of the  
contract and Owner is expressly relying on this verification in agreeing to enter into the  
contract with Contractor.

**1.04 TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, CONTRACTOR AGREES TO  
INDEMNIFY, DEFEND AND HOLD HARMLESS OWNER FROM ALL CLAIMS,  
CAUSES OF ACTION, LEGAL PROCEEDINGS, DAMAGES, COSTS, FEES AND  
EXPENSES ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO AN ACTUAL OR ALLEGED  
MISREPRESENTATION BY CONTRACTOR PROVIDED HEREUNDER.**

**Prohibition on Boycotting Israel and Contracting with Terrorist Organizations [Continued]**

---

Contractor Signature

State of Texas

County of \_\_\_\_\_

Before me, a notary public, on this day personally appeared

\_\_\_\_\_, known to me to be the person whose name is  
subscribed to the foregoing document and, being by me first duly sworn, declared that the statements  
therein contained in Paragraph 1A and B and Paragraph 2 are true and correct.

(Personalized Seal)

---

Notary Public's Signature

Receipt and incorporation into the above referenced contract hereby agreed to and acknowledged by:

---

Owner Signature

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 00 6113.10****PERFORMANCE BOND AND LABOR AND MATERIALS PAYMENT BOND****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 PERFORMANCE BOND AND LABOR AND MATERIALS PAYMENT BOND**

- A. The Contractor shall, prior to the execution of the Contract, furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and the payment of all obligations arising thereunder in the amount of 100% of the Contract Sum covering 100% performance and 100% payment, and with such sureties secured through the Contractor's usual sources as may be agreeable to the parties.
- B. The Contractor shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner no later than the date of execution of the Contract, or if the Work is commenced prior thereto in response to a letter of intent, the Contractor shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished.
- C. The Contractor shall require the Attorney-In-Fact who executes the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix thereto a certified and current copy of his Power of Attorney.
- D. Surety's Standard Performance Bond and Labor and Material Payment Bond, meeting requirements of the Hardeman Act, will be the forms used as Performance and Labor and Material Payment Bonds for this Project.

**END OF SECTION**

PERFORMANCE BOND

STATE OF TEXAS Contract Date \_\_\_\_\_

COUNTY OF \_\_\_\_\_ Date Bond Executed \_\_\_\_\_

PRINCIPAL \_\_\_\_\_

SURETY \_\_\_\_\_

OWNER Continental Homes of Texas, L.P.

PENAL SUM OF BOND (in words and figures) \_\_\_\_\_

(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), being 100 percent of the Contract Price.

CONTRACT for Construction of Water, Sanitary Sewer, Street, Drainage Improvements and related appurtenances for Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 2M-2 and Berm Modification, Medina County, Texas (the "Contract").

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, Principal and Surety above named, are held and firmly bound unto Owner, its successors and assigns, in the penal sum of the amount stated above, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves and our respective heirs, executors, administrators, officers, directors, shareholders, partners, successors, and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, Principal entered into that certain Contract with Owner, which Contract is expressly incorporated herein for all purposes.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that if Principal well and truly performs the work in accordance with the plans, specifications and any other contract documents, during the original term of the Contract and any extensions thereof that may be granted by Owner, with or without notice to Surety, and during the life of any guaranty or warranty required under the Contract, then this obligation is void; otherwise it is to remain in full force and effect. Should the Principal fail to faithfully and strictly perform the work as required by the Contract in all its terms, the Surety will be liable for all damages, losses, expenses and liabilities that the Owner may suffer in consequence thereof.

This Bond is given in compliance with the provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code, as amended, which is incorporated herein by this reference. However, all of the express provisions contained herein and in the Contract are applicable whether or not within the scope of said statute.

Surety hereby agrees, for value received, that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to work performed under the Contract, or to the plans, specifications or drawings accompanying the Contract, will in any way affect its obligations on this Bond and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work to be performed thereunder.



**CERTIFICATE AS TO CORPORATE PRINCIPAL**

I, \_\_\_\_\_, certify that I am the secretary of the corporation named as Principal in the Bond; that \_\_\_\_\_, who signed the Bond on behalf of Principal, was then \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation; that I know his or her signature, and his or her signature is genuine; and that the Bond was duly signed for and on behalf of the corporation by authority of its governing body.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Corporate Secretary

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporate Seal)

**ATTACH POWER OF ATTORNEY**

**PAYMENT BOND**

STATE OF TEXAS

Contract Date \_\_\_\_\_

COUNTY OF HARRIS

Date Bond Executed \_\_\_\_\_

PRINCIPAL \_\_\_\_\_

SURETY \_\_\_\_\_

OWNER Continental Homes of Texas, L.P.

PENAL SUM OF BOND (in words and figures) \_\_\_\_\_

(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), being 100 percent of the Contract Price.

CONTRACT for Construction of Water, Sanitary Sewer, Street, Drainage Improvements and related appurtenances for Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 2M-2, Medina County, Texas (the "Contract").

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, Principal and Surety above named, are held and firmly bound unto Owner, its successors and assigns, in the penal sum of the amount stated above, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves and our respective heirs, executors, administrators, officers, directors, shareholders, partners, successors, and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, Principal entered into that certain Contract with Owner, which Contract is expressly incorporated herein for all purposes.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that if Principal shall promptly pay claimants for all labor, subcontracts, materials and specially fabricated materials performed or furnished under or by virtue of the Contract, and duly authorized modifications and normal and usual extras thereto, notice of which modifications to Surety being hereby waived, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect. Should Principal fail to promptly pay claimants for all labor, subcontracts, materials and specially fabricated materials performed or furnished under or by virtue of the Contract, Surety is hereby bound to make such payments on behalf of Principal up to a total aggregate amount equal to the penal sum of the bond. Labor, subcontracts, materials, and specially fabricated materials shall be construed in accordance with Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code.

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that Owner having required Principal to furnish this Bond in order to comply with the provisions of Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code, all rights and remedies on this Bond shall inure solely to such claimants and shall be determined in accordance with the provisions, conditions, and limitations of the aforesaid Government Code to the same extent as if they were copied at length herein.

The bound parties have executed this instrument pursuant to authority of their respective governing body, to be effective on the same date of the Contract.

\_\_\_\_\_  
PRINCIPAL ATTEST

By \_\_\_\_\_ By \_\_\_\_\_  
Name \_\_\_\_\_ Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Title \_\_\_\_\_ Title \_\_\_\_\_  
Address \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(SEAL)

\_\_\_\_\_  
SURETY ATTEST

By \_\_\_\_\_ By \_\_\_\_\_  
Name \_\_\_\_\_ Name \_\_\_\_\_  
Title \_\_\_\_\_ Title \_\_\_\_\_

(SEAL)

Physical Address:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Mailing Address:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_

Local Recording Agent Personal Identification Number:

\_\_\_\_\_

Agency Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Agency Address \_\_\_\_\_

Agency Telephone \_\_\_\_\_

**Surety must attach its original Power of Attorney to this Bond.**



CERTIFICATE AS TO CORPORATE PRINCIPAL

I, \_\_\_\_\_, certify that I am the secretary of the corporation named as Principal in the Bond; that \_\_\_\_\_, who signed the Bond on behalf of Principal, was then \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation; that I know his or her signature, and his or her signature is genuine; and that the Bond was duly signed for and on behalf of the corporation by authority of its governing body.

\_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Seal)

Signature of Corporate Secretary

**ATTACH POWER OF ATTORNEY**

**SECTION 00 7300.10  
SPECIAL CONDITIONS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SPECIAL CONDITIONS**

- A. Pape-Dawson Engineers will be serving as the representative for the Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 3 of Medina County. Contractor shall coordinate construction with Pape-Dawson and respective County inspectors.
- B. There is existing tree canopy within the limits of Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 2M-1 that must remain and be protected throughout all phases of construction. Please refer to project tree plan.
- C. The Owner is expecting the Contractor to deliver a complete construction project (in accordance with the plans). Any bid containing exclusions that are in conflict with these specifications or are considered to be unreasonable by the Engineer will result in a disqualification of the bid.
- D. Contractor is responsible for haul off or on-site embankment of trench spoils.
- E. This job may require rock excavation. Any bid excluding rock excavation will be disqualified.
- F. Project is import. There is an existing stockpile within Redbird Ranch Phase 2, located in Unit 1M-6. Contractor is responsible for all geotechnical testing for material prior to placement.
- G. There are two water wells located in Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 5M. Contractor to not disturb the existing wells and coordinate with Continental Homes of Texas.
- H. The project specifications and TPDES plan shall be considered part of the construction documents and Contractor shall include in their bid all compliance with these documents.
- I. Contractor shall be expected to revegetate all disturbed areas in accordance with the TPDES Plan for this project. Hydromulch should be placed in a manner consistent with manufacturer's specifications. Contractor shall irrigate all such areas until vegetation is established.
- J. Hydromulch shall be Texas Native Blend or as approved by the landscape architect or Owner and will include 2" Topsoil.
- K. Contractor shall install tree protection around all protected trees in accordance with plans.
- L. Contractor shall coordinate fine grading around all protected trees with the Owner.
- M. Reference Geotechnical Engineering Report for this project. Contractor shall include in their bid all compliance with this document.
- N. It is the Developer's intent to have all dry utilities installed prior to laying base. Contractor shall coordinate, including scheduling, with city public service, Spectrum and AT&T.
- O. All unsuitable material shall be removed from the site by the Contractor, at his expense.
- P. Time is of the essence for construction of this project. Contractor to obtain field acceptances from all utility agencies and Medina County within the calendar days allowed for this project.
- Q. All construction staking shall be provided by the Contractor. Contractor shall locate and protect control points prior to starting work and preserve all points during construction. Contractor shall reimburse Engineer for all stakes, benchmarks, control points, etc. required to be replaced for any reason during the course of construction.

- R. All on-site testing shall be paid for by Owner. The Contractor will coordinate and schedule all testing as required. Any retesting shall be paid for by Contractor.
- S. All excavation is unclassified.
- T. The Contractor shall prepare a well-coordinated bid, which includes all related work between subcontractors and incorporates all coordination of work. The Contractor shall assure all subcontractors have had access to the total bid package (drawings, specs, special conditions, etc.) to assure the bid and construction is fully coordinated.
- U. Any modification to existing ranch fencing or gates shall be coordinated with Continental Homes of Texas, L.P.
- V. By submitting a bid, Contractor will hold unit prices for ninety (90) days from the date of bid submittal.
- W. Attached to this section are the Continental Homes of Texas, L.P. "Instructions to Bidders." If there are any discrepancies between the specifications and aforementioned "Instruction to Bidders," the "Instructions to Bidders" will prevail.

**END OF SECTION**

## CONTINENTAL HOMES OF TEXAS, L.P.

## INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1. This is an invitation for Bidders to provide **CONTINENTAL HOMES OF TEXAS, L.P.**, dba D.R. Horton, Inc., on behalf of Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 3 of Medina County (OWNER) a proposal for the construction of **Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Units 2M-2** consisting of site clearing & grading, sedimentation & erosion control, street, drainage, sanitary sewer, and water improvements. This is a "public" bid. Sealed bids will be received in the office of **Pape Dawson Engineers**, located at 1672 Independence Drive, Suite 102, New Braunfels Texas 78132 on or before **3:00 p.m. on the 13<sup>th</sup> day of December 2024**. Bid documents may be obtained in electronic format. Please contact **Vance Weynand with DHI Engineering, LLC** at [VLWeynand@DHIEngineering.com](mailto:VLWeynand@DHIEngineering.com).
2. Bidders shall submit a unit price for each item for which a bid is requested. Proposals must be submitted in sealed envelopes in accordance with the bid specifications. All bids must be accompanied by a Construction Schedule. Any bids received without a Construction Schedule will not be accepted. Winning bidder will be required to provide monthly Construction Schedule updates to Owner.
3. The Owner reserves the right to reject any and all bids, to waive all formalities, or to award a contract to the lowest bidder as qualified in accordance with the conditions set forth in the specifications.
4. The successful bidder will be required to enter into a Contract with the Owner, requiring full compliance and performance of the conditions of the proposal, plans and specifications as designed by DHI Engineering. (ENGINEER) and reviewed by Medina County and/or other agency as required and agrees to commence work within five (5) days after notification to begin, unless otherwise directed by Owner.
5. Bidders are required to inspect the site and inform themselves of all conditions affecting the execution of the work to be performed. The filing of the proposal shall constitute an admission by the bidder that he has carried out the foregoing stipulations to his entire satisfaction. Quantities included in the plans and proposals are estimated and are to be regarded as approximate only. The Owner reserves the right to vary the quantities, to construct all, or any part, or to delete any part or item of work, which may be deemed advisable. Variations will be adjusted at the unit price provided. No profit, overhead or other reimbursement will be paid by the Owner in the event of a deletion of work. **It is the bidder's responsibility to verify all quantities against the plans. Bidder shall notify Engineer immediately, and prior to bid submittal, of any variances in excess of 3% of quantities given in the bid documents provided. Once bid sheets are received it will be understood that the contractor agrees with the quantities and/or specifications of the plans. Any and all variances in quantities experienced during the construction process and submitted as a change order shall be paid at the applicable unit price provided in bidder's proposal.**
6. Construction will conform to the following current specifications as applicable.
  - a. City of San Antonio "Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction" plus current amendments together with any special specifications issued by City of San Antonio.
  - b. Medina County "Specifications for Subdivision," if located outside

- City of San Antonio city limits inside Medina County.
- c. Per service area, San Antonio Water System (SAWS) "Standard Specifications for Construction," Bexar Metropolitan Water District (BMWD) specifications, or San Antonio River Authority (SARA) specifications.
  - d. Per service area, Yancey Water Supply Corporation, Yancey construction standards for water improvements.
  - e. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality "Rules and Regulations for Public Water Systems."
  - f. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality "Design Criteria For Sewerage systems" Chapter 317 and "Edwards Aquifer" Chapter 213.
7. Portions of this proposal may be deleted. Prices for all items must stand on their own.
8. No rock clauses shall be noted on bids, nor will they be accepted by Owner. All bidders are expected to thoroughly review and inform themselves of all existing site and sub-surface conditions prior to submittal of proposals.
9. Contractor to complete the material take-off for items bid lump sum. Quantities shown on the plans are estimates only.
10. Direct all technical questions concerning this proposal to **Vance Weynand, P.E., PMP** with **DHI Engineering, LLC (210) 582-0811, VLWeynand@DHIengineering.com**

#### **STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SW3P)**

1. Contractor is responsible for installing and maintaining the erosion and sedimentation controls as designed and shall inspect the controls Bi-weekly (14 days) and after every significant rainfall (1/2 inch or greater) to ensure significant disturbance to the structure has not occurred. Sediment deposited after a significant rainfall shall be removed and placed in a designated soil disposal area. Contractor to provide Owner with one complete set of all SW3P inspection reports, including updates and modifications, prior to receiving final payment for project.

#### **CLEARING AND GRADING**

1. The Engineer's lot grading plan and street profiles included in the construction documents shall represent finished grades of the proposed project. The Engineer shall provide topographic digital surfaces of both existing and proposed grades. The existing ground surface was produced using LIDAR topography and on-the-ground field shots. The Contractor is ultimately responsible for verifying the existing ground using whatever field surveying methods necessary. In addition, the contractor is solely responsible for the accuracy of the earthwork quantities (embankment, excavation, material import, and material export) in the contractor's submitted bid that are necessary to produce the finished grades. It shall be the intent of the contractor to finish the project to the finished grades included in the construction documents based on the earthwork quantities set forth in the contractor's submitted bid, and without importing additional material and without producing stockpiles of extra material except as directed by owner or engineer. Contractor shall not stockpile any material on owner's property without owner's approval. Any material handling outside of the contracted amount needed to produce the finished grades for the project (including, without limitation, material importing and material exporting) shall be deemed as non-pay items,

**and shall be performed by the contractor at the contractor's sole cost and expense.**

2. Clearing and or grading for street right-of-ways and utility easements shall be included in the base bid cost for site clearing and grading. Contractor is to clear entire project site of all underbrush and undesirable vegetation unless directed otherwise. Contact Owner for extent and sequence of lot clearing and coordination with any applicable tree ordinance.
3. Excavated material that is free of organic matter and other deleterious substances may be disposed on-site, as approved by Owner. Said material will be utilized as fill material for lots and easements as per the Grading Plan and compacted to meet 79G requirements with 95% Standard Density using ASTM 698 or TEX-114E. No fill shall be placed within flood plain areas until a "Flood Plain Development Permit" has first been obtained. Fills in flood plain areas require compaction testing for every twelve (12) inch lift, and fills greater than one foot deep within building pad areas require compaction testing for every six (6") inch lift.

Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner's choice of geotechnical testing lab to schedule all geotechnical and compaction testing.

**The Owner will pay for all geotechnical testing required for verification of conformance with project specifications, unless otherwise specified. Any and all costs for re-testing due to failure to meet specifications or lack of preparedness will be paid by the contractor.**

4. Excavated material placed on lots shall have positive drainage to prevent any ponding of water and provide a minimum final grade as specified on grading plans.
5. Contractor shall submit a letter to Engineer and Owner after completion of final grading of utility easements, certifying that the grades on the utility easements are completed as per the grading plan. Owner may, at its discretion, verify that all final utility grades conform to proposed grading plan.
6. Contractor shall submit a letter to Engineer and Owner after completion of final grading of lots, certifying that the grades on the lots are completed as per the grading plan. Owner may, at its discretion, verify that all final lots' grades conform to proposed grading plan within 0.1,' but in no circumstances shall grades be less than 1.0%.
7. Contractor shall be responsible for disposing of all waste materials including, but not limited to, excess excavation, concrete, trees, and any other material which is not part of the completed contract work. No separate pay item.
8. Prior to any lot grading, Contractor shall contact Owner to determine if any trees in areas of fill/excavation can be saved.
9. Any and all fill materials imported to the site by contractor for the purpose of satisfying the proposed grading plan shall be reasonably homogeneous to existing site conditions, acceptable by Engineer and/or Owner, and shall conform to all specifications listed in Section 3 above.

**STREETS AND DRAINS**

1. Street excavation includes cut in the parkways, as per design plans.
2. Contractor will protect existing fences, concrete curbs, and sidewalks during construction. Any damage will be repaired by the contractor at no extra cost to Owner.
3. If driveway locations are known prior to installation of curb, Contractor shall depress curb at driveway location for each lot. Contractor to coordinate with Engineer for driveway locations prior to laying any curb. No separate pay item.
4. The contractor must coordinate and schedule all testing required by Medina County.
5. Street geotechnical material testing will be paid for by the Owner. Any retesting required due to the failure of the initial tests to meet specifications will be at the contractor's expense.

**WATER AND SEWER**

1. Water is located within Yancey jurisdiction for Unit 2M-2. A General Construction Permit is required for water and sewer improvements. Warranty Assignment, Payment and Receipt Affidavit will be required. Cost of a one-year warranty for said contract shall be included in unit prices bid for those items.
2. Sewer is located within SAWS jurisdiction for Unit 2M-2. A General Construction Permit is required for water and sewer improvements. Warranty Assignment, Payment and Receipt Affidavit will be required. Cost of a one-year warranty for said contract shall be included in unit prices bid for those items.
3. Contractor shall provide Engineer with as-built plans at or before the final walk through inspection.
4. Contractor will be responsible for coordinating and scheduling all required meetings and inspections with SAWS and Yancey Unit 2M-2 and the Engineer.
5. Water system to be restrained. Restraints are not individually measured and are considered subsidiary to bid item.

**UTILITIES**

1. The Contractor will be required to coordinate work with the utility companies that will be installing electric, gas, telephone, and TV.
2. The Contractor is responsible for coordinating with utility companies to mark existing buried utilities that may be affected by construction. The Contractor will be responsible to repair damaged utilities due to construction.

3. Placement of sleeves for utility street crossings is located on the Utility Plat. Bid item will include all materials and installation and coordination with CPS Energy, AT&T, and Cable TV or appropriate Utility provider. Contractor shall notify Utility provider prior to street (subgrade) and/or drain construction. Sleeve placements for utility street and drain crossings are required when street and/or drain construction precedes utility installation. Quantity will be measured using horizontal length and cost is to include 90° sweeps, caps, and additional vertical PVC length so that caps are exposed 6" above finished ground.
4. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner for placement of private conduits.

**DISPOSAL OF DEBRIS**

1. The contractor will be required to maintain a clean site at all times. Any and all "consumed product" waste (i.e. lunch bags, beverage containers, etc.) must be promptly disposed of in a proper manner. The site must be left clear of all excess trash and debris at all times. Failure to comply will result in a fine to be assessed per day by the Owner.

**ACCESS TO ADJOINING PROPERTIES**

1. Access to adjoining properties, including those in the possession of Owner, shall be strictly forbidden unless direct and explicit written permission is given by Owner.

**PARKING AND MATERIAL PLACEMENT**

1. The contractor shall coordinate with Owner for parking and placement of all materials and equipment.
2. Owner will not be responsible for any damaged, stolen, or vandalized equipment, vehicles, materials, supplies, etc.

**INVOICING**

1. Any and all changes to the original construction contract shall be acknowledged and approved by Owner, Engineer, and Contractor prior to commencement of pertinent work. Any unapproved work performed which is outside of the scope and arrangement of the original contract shall be solely at Contractor's expense.
2. All monthly contract pay draws shall be submitted to Engineer for approval and verification (that all current work has been completed and is in accordance with the plans and specifications) prior to payment processing by Owner. Monthly draws shall be submitted on or following the last day of each month and shall not include work estimated to be completed but not actually completed. Contractor shall not invoice for materials on hand.
3. Contractor retainage will not be released until all applicable field acceptances are received from the respective agencies. In addition, all as-built plans, warranty assignments, payment and receipt affidavits, and acceptance checklists must also be received by the Engineer prior to release of



retainage.

#### PERMITS

1. All required Permits/Tree Affidavit must be obtained prior to construction of any kind taking place.
2. Any construction without necessary Permits/Tree Affidavit is at Contractor's risk.

#### FIELD ACCEPTANCES AND APPROVALS

1. Contractor agrees that it will, as part of the award of contract, obtain and provide to Owner all interim and final field inspection approvals, all interim and final completion approvals or certificates by governing utility and governmental authorities in writing, including Preliminary Field Acceptance upon substantial completion as well as Final Acceptance following the applicable warranty period. **The applicable warranty period for this contract shall be 18 months from field acceptance for water, sewer, streets, and drainage.** Contractor agrees to timely provide plan of record construction documents within 30 calendar days of substantial completion of the project.

#### SCHEDULE

1. Contractor is to begin mobilization and erosion control on or before TBD.
2. Contractor to provide construction schedule with anticipated final acceptance date with their bid.

#### MISCELLANEOUS

1. Sewer and Water GCPs will be available within 60 days after bid is awarded.
2. Medina County approved plans will be available within 150 days.
3. Site has SWPPP established for grading. Final SWPPP permit is approved.
4. Project is import. There is an existing stockpile within Redbird Ranch Phase 2, located in Unit 1M-6. Contractor is responsible for all geotechnical testing for material prior to placement.
5. SCHEDULE is critical to this project.
6. Coordination with other on-site contractor(s) will be required.
7. Construction access location will be determined by engineer and owner.

#### BID SUBMITTAL

The following must be submitted. Any item from this list not included in the bid will cause the bid to be disqualified.

1. Completed bid tab.

2. Signed Instructions to Bidders form
3. Construction Schedule
4. Applicable addenda

**LIQUIDATED DAMAGES**

1. Owner shall be entitled to recover from Contractor as liquidated damages and not as a penalty, the sum of \$1,000.00 per day for each calendar day beyond the Substantial Completion Deadline that Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work (subject only to permissible delays properly documented as set forth in Section 2.11 of the construction contract).

Contractor's signature shall indicate an understanding and acceptance of all conditions set forth in these Instructions to Bidders.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Bidder's Name & Address:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**END (CHT)**

**SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF THE AGREEMENT  
PART A**

**I. BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE OR INSTALLATION FLOATER INSURANCE**

- A. Builder's Risk. Unless otherwise provided in the Agreement and before beginning the Work, Contractor shall purchase and maintain builder's risk insurance, if available, upon the Work on a completed value basis, in the amount of the full insurable replacement cost thereof from an insurer rated by Best's A- and VII or better. This insurance shall:
- i. include the Owner, Contractor, all Subcontractors, and any individuals or entities required by the Special Conditions to be insured under such builder's risk policy, as insureds. For purposes of the remainder of this Section I.A. through I.O., and any corresponding Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A, the parties required to be insured shall collectively be referred to as "insureds."
  - ii. be written on a builder's risk "all risk" policy form that shall at least include insurance for physical loss or damage to the Work, temporary buildings, falsework, and materials and equipment in transit, and shall insure against at least the following perils or causes of loss: fire; lightning; windstorm; riot; civil commotion; terrorism; vehicle impact; aircraft; smoke; theft; vandalism and malicious mischief; mechanical breakdown, boiler explosion, and artificially generated electric current; earthquake; volcanic activity, and other earth movement; flood; collapse; explosion; debris removal; demolition occasioned by enforcement of Laws and Regulations; water damage (other than that caused by flood); and such other perils or causes of loss as may be specifically required by the Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A. If insurance against mechanical breakdown, boiler explosion, and artificially generated electric current; earthquake; volcanic activity, and other earth movement; or flood, are not commercially available under builder's risk policies, by endorsement or otherwise, such insurance may be provided through other insurance policies acceptable to Owner and Contractor.
  - iii. cover, as insured property, at least the following: (a) the Work and all materials, supplies, machinery, apparatus, equipment, fixtures, and other property of a similar nature that are to be incorporated into or used in the preparation, fabrication, construction, erection, or completion of the Work, including Owner-furnished or assigned property; (b) spare parts inventory required within the scope of the Agreement; and (c) temporary works which are not intended to form part of the permanent constructed Work but which are intended to provide working access to the Site, or to the Work under construction, or which are intended to provide temporary support for the Work under construction, including scaffolding, form work, fences, shoring, falsework, and temporary structures.
  - iv. cover expenses incurred in the repair or replacement of any insured property (including but not limited to fees and charges of engineers and architects).
  - v. extend to cover damage or loss to insured property while in temporary storage at the Site or in a storage location outside the Site (but not including property stored at the premises of a manufacturer or supplier).

- vi. extend to cover damage or loss to insured property while in transit.
  - vii. allow for partial occupation or use of the Work by Owner, such that those portions of the Work that are not yet occupied or used by Owner shall remain covered by the builder's risk insurance.
  - viii. allow for the waiver of the insurer's subrogation rights, as set forth below.
  - ix. not include a co-insurance clause.
  - x. include an exception for ensuing losses from physical damage or loss with respect to any defective workmanship, design, or materials exclusions.
  - xi. include performance/hot testing and start-up.
  - xii. be maintained in effect, subject to the provisions herein regarding Substantial Completion and partial occupancy or use of the Work by Owner, until the Work is complete.
- B. **Installation Floater.** If builder's risk insurance is not generally available in the insurance marketplace for the Work, the Contractor shall obtain an installation floater insurance policy acceptable to Owner, or other acceptable equivalent policy as follows:
- X No Installation Floater is required.
  - ☐ The Installation Floater shall be in the amount of all installed, fabricated, or erected property being incorporated into the Work under the Contract.
- Such policy shall cover all risks of physical loss or damage, including flood and earthquake, to the Work. Such coverage shall continue in full force and effect pursuant to Subparagraph I.A.xiii. The installation floater or equivalent policy shall name the Owner, Contractor, and any individuals or entities required by the Special Conditions to be insured under such installation floater, as insureds.
- C. **Contract with No Property.** Neither builder's risk insurance nor an installation floater is required under the Contract when the Engineer determines the Work does NOT involve installation, fabrication, or erection of any property, including but not limited to any fixtures, materials, or equipment, which could be covered under such policies. The risk of loss, however, still remains with the Contractor pursuant to the Contract Documents.
- D. **Insurance Certificates.** Before beginning the Work under this Agreement, Contractor shall furnish certificates of insurance to Owner with endorsements evidencing that the insurance required under this Section I is in full force and effect. Contractor shall provide new, replacement certificates, evidencing the procurement of successor policies, prior to the expiration of each required policy for so long as this Agreement is in effect.
- E. **Accuracy of Information.** Contractor warrants the accuracy of all information shown on each certificate furnished to Owner by Contractor or on Contractor's behalf by Contractor's broker or other representative.

- F. Notice of Cancellation or Change. The Builder's risk, installation floater and all the policies of insurance (and the certificates or other evidence thereof) required to be purchased and maintained in accordance with this Section I of the Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A will contain a provision or endorsement that the coverage afforded will not be canceled or materially changed or renewal refused until at least seven (7) days prior written notice has been given to the purchasing policyholder. Within three (3) days of receipt of any such written notice, the purchasing policyholder shall provide a copy of the notice to each other insured.
- G. Deductibles. The purchaser of any required builder's risk, installation floater, or other property insurance shall pay all premiums and costs not covered because of the application of a policy deductible or self-insured retentions.
- H. Partial Occupancy or Use by Owner. If Owner will occupy or use a portion or portions of the Work prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work, then Owner (directly, if it is the purchaser of the builder's risk policy, or through Contractor) will provide notice of such occupancy or use to the insurer. The builder's risk, installation floater, or equivalent policy of insurance shall not be canceled or permitted to lapse on account of any such partial use or occupancy; rather, those portions of the Work that are occupied or used by Owner may be removed from coverage under the builder's risk policy, installation floater or equivalent policy, while those portions of the Work not yet occupied or used by Owner shall remain covered by the builder's risk insurance, installation floater, or equivalent policy.
- I. Additional Insurance. If Contractor elects to obtain other special insurance to be included in or supplement the builder's risk, installation floater, or other property insurance policies provided under this Section I of the Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A, it may do so at Contractor's expense.
- J. Insurance of Other Property. If the express insurance provisions of the Agreement do not require or address the insurance of a property item or interest, such as tools, construction equipment, or other personal property owned by Contractor, a Subcontractor, or an employee of Contractor or a Subcontractor, then the entity or individual owning such property item will be responsible for deciding whether to insure it, and if so in what amount. The entity or individual procuring the insurance is responsible for payment of premiums.
- K. Non-Waiver - No Limitation of Owner's Rights. Contractor unilaterally agrees to comply with the provisions of this Section. Accordingly, Owner's knowledge concerning deficiencies in Contractor's insurance, including non-compliance with this Section shown by any insurance certificate or other information furnished to Owner, shall not affect Owner's rights and shall not result in a waiver or otherwise limit or impair Owner's remedies for Contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of this Section.
- L. No Impairment or Waiver of Rights. Nothing contained in this Section shall restrict, limit, impair or waive Owner's rights or Contractor's duties under the other terms of this Agreement or under applicable law. The cancellation, expiration, or exhaustion of any of the insurance required above shall not preclude Owner from recovery against Contractor for any liability arising under this Agreement or under law.
- M. Automatic Reformation to Conform to Law. The parties intend this Agreement to comply with Texas law. Accordingly, the parties agree that any legal limitations now or hereafter in effect

and affecting the validity or enforceability of any provision of this Agreement are made a part hereof and shall operate to amend this Agreement to the minimum extent necessary to bring all provisions into conformity with the requirements of such limitations and, as so modified, this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.

N. Waiver of Rights.

- i. All policies purchased in accordance with this Section I of the Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A, expressly including the builder's risk policy and installation floater policy or equivalent policy, shall contain provisions to the effect that in the event of payment of any loss or damage the insurers will have no rights of recovery against any insureds thereunder, or their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors. Owner and Contractor waive all rights against each other and the respective officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them, for all losses and damages caused by, arising out of, or resulting from any of the perils or causes of loss covered by such policies to the extent of actual coverage under such policies; and, in addition, waive all such rights against all individuals or entities identified in the Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A as insureds, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them, under such policies for losses and damages so caused. None of the above waivers shall extend to the rights that any party making such waiver may have to the proceeds of insurance held by Owner or Contractor as trustee or fiduciary, or otherwise payable under any policy so issued.
- ii. Contractor shall be responsible for assuring that the agreement under which a Subcontractor performs a portion of the Work contains provisions whereby the Subcontractor waives all rights against Owner, Contractor, all individuals or entities identified in the Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A as insureds, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them, for all losses and damages caused by, arising out of, relating to, or resulting from any of the perils or causes of loss covered by builder's risk insurance, installation floater and any other property insurance applicable to the Work.

O. Receipt and Application of Property Insurance Proceeds.

- i. Any insured loss under the builder's risk, installation floater or other policies of insurance required by this Section I of the Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A will be adjusted and settled with the named insured that purchased the policy. Such named insured shall act as fiduciary for the other insureds, and give notice to such other insureds that adjustment and settlement of a claim is in progress. Any other insured may state its position regarding a claim for insured loss in writing within fifteen (15) days after notice of such claim.
- ii. Proceeds for such insured losses may be made payable by the insurer either jointly to multiple insureds, or to the named insured that purchased the policy in its own right and as fiduciary for other insureds, subject to the requirements of any applicable mortgage clause.

## II. **LIABILITY INSURANCE**

- A. **Insurance Certificates.** In addition to the coverages described and required in Section I above and before beginning the Work under this Agreement, Contractor shall furnish certificates of insurance to Owner evidencing that the insurance required below is in force and effect. Contractor shall provide new, replacement certificates, evidencing the procurement of successor policies, prior to the expiration of each required policy for so long as this Agreement is in effect.
- B. **Accuracy of Information.** Contractor warrants the accuracy of all information shown on each certificate furnished to Owner by Contractor or on Contractor's behalf by Contractor's broker or other representative.
- C. **Minimum Required Insurance and Minimum Limits of Liability.** Before beginning the Work, and throughout performance of the Work and the term of this Agreement, Contractor shall obtain and maintain in force and effect, at Contractor's sole expense, insurance of the following types and amounts from insurance rated by Best's A- and VII or better:
- i. **Workers' Compensation Insurance** affording statutory benefits in accordance with all requirements of the Texas Workers' Compensation Act and covering Contractor's employees.
  - ii. **Employer's Liability Insurance** with limits of not less than \$1,000,000 per accident or disease.
  - iii. **Commercial General Liability Insurance**, including coverage for bodily injury and property damage, personal and advertising injury, the products-completed operations hazard, and insured contracts, applicable in Texas, on a form no less broad than the Insurance Services Office ("ISO") CG 00 01 form dated 2004 or thereafter, and with limits of not less than:
    - (1) Each Occurrence - \$1,000,000
    - (2) General Aggregate - \$2,000,000
    - (3) Products-Completed Operations Aggregate - \$2,000,000
    - (4) Personal & Advertising Injury - \$1,000,000
  - iv. **Business Automobile Liability Insurance**, including coverage for bodily injury and property damage, on a form no less broad than the ISO CA 00 01 form dated 2010 or thereafter, with limits of not less than \$1,000,000 combined single limit for each accident and covering owned, hired or leased, and non-owned autos.
  - v. **Excess or Umbrella Liability Insurance**, affording coverage no less broad than, and applying excess of the limits of liability, of the policies required by II.C.ii., II.C.iii., and II.C.iv., above, with limits of not less than \$2,000,000 per occurrence and in the aggregate.
- D. **Additional Insurance or Limits.** Paragraphs II.C, above, states the minimum types of liability insurance and limits of liability required by this Agreement in connection with the Work. Contractor may, in its sole discretion, procure additional insurance or higher limits of liability at Contractor's sole expense.

- E. Additional Insureds. To the extent allowed by law, the Commercial General Liability Insurance, Business Automobile Liability Insurance, and Excess or Umbrella Insurance required by II.C.iii., II.C.iv., and II.C.v., above, shall be endorsed to provide that the Indemnified Parties (collectively, “the Additional Insureds”), are added as additional insureds for liability arising out of the Work, to include liability based on either alleged fault or vicarious liability. Such additional insured coverage shall not be limited to liability caused by Contractor or Contractor’s fault. The Additional Insureds shall be afforded additional insured status on the policies required by paragraphs II.C.iii and II.C.v, above, under a combination of the ISO CG 20 10 10 01 and ISO CG 20 37 10 01 endorsements.
- F. Primary/Non-Contributing. The insurance policies required by II.C.iii., II.C.iv., and II.C.v., above, shall provide that the Additional Insureds are covered on a primary basis. Also, the insurance policies required by II.C.iii., II.C.iv., and II.C.v., above shall be endorsed to provide that Contractor’s insurers will not seek contribution or recovery from such other insurance as may be available to the Additional Insureds.
- G. Insurance Required of Contractor’s Subcontractors. Contractor shall require all subcontractors who will perform any of the Work to obtain the same insurance and limits of liability as required by II.C., above. Contractor shall also require all such subcontractors to cause their insurers to waive subrogation to the same extent as required of Contractor’s insurers by the following provision, H. Contractor shall obtain Certificates of Insurance from its subcontractors before they begin any of the Work and, upon request, shall provide copies thereof to Owner.
- H. Waiver of Subrogation in Favor of Indemnified Parties. The parties intend that none of Contractor’s insurers shall subrogate against the Indemnified Parties. Accordingly, Contractor agrees to cause all of its insurers—not limited to insurers underwriting the policies required above—to waive subrogation against the Indemnified Parties and its directors. **For the avoidance of doubt, Contractor also agrees that it presently waives and releases all rights of recovery, claims, or causes of action that might hereafter arise in favor of Contractor against Indemnified Parties for any loss, damage or liability that is covered by Contractor’s insurance, regardless of whether the loss, damage or liability is caused by the negligence, breach of any legal duty, or other fault of the Indemnified Parties.** The foregoing waiver and release is effective even if Contractor fails to obtain the required insurance.
- I. Notice of Cancellation, Modification or Impairment of Limits. The policies required above shall be endorsed to provide that they will not be canceled, or the coverage or limits of liability thereunder materially changed, without at least seven (7) days’ prior written notice to Owner.
- J. Notice of Impairment of Limits. Contractor shall give written notice to Owner no later than seven (7) days after the date on which an impairment of a required aggregate limit, due to the payment of a claim or defense expense, reduces the available aggregate limit to an amount 50% or less than the aggregate limit required above. If Contractor’s available excess insurance will not drop down and comply with paragraph II.C. of these insurance requirements, Owner may require reinstatement of an impaired aggregate limit up to the amount required.
- K. Information Concerning Contractor’s Insurance Program. If Owner has questions concerning Contractor’s casualty insurance program, Contractor agrees to promptly answer them.



Complete, true and correct copies of each policy required above shall be furnished to Owner promptly upon Owner's request, but Contractor may redact payroll and premium information. Contractor agrees to cooperate with Owner, and with Owner's insurance broker, in the event Owner elects to seek or obtain additional insurance benefiting Owner. Contractor also provides Owner permission to communicate with Contractor's insurance broker regarding coverages required under the Contract Documents.

- L. Contractor's Compliance with Policy Conditions. Contractor shall comply with and not violate, or knowingly permit to be violated, any condition of the insurance policies required in these Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A. Contractor agrees to give its insurers timely written notice of all occurrences, accidents or claims arising out of the Work, with a copy to Owner.
- M. Contractor's Payment of Premiums, Deductibles and SIRs. Contractor, not Owner, shall be responsible for any and all policy premiums, deductibles, or self-insured retentions payable in connection with Contractor's insurance, including the insurance required above.
- N. Non-Waiver - No Limitation of Owner's Rights. Contractor unilaterally agrees to comply with the provisions of these Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A. Accordingly, Owner's knowledge concerning deficiencies in Contractor's insurance, including non-compliance with this Section shown by any insurance certificate or other information furnished to Owner, shall not affect Owner's rights and shall not result in a waiver or otherwise limit or impair Owner's remedies for Contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of this Section.
- O. No Impairment or Waiver of Rights. Nothing contained in these Special Conditions of the Agreement Part A shall restrict, limit, impair or waive Owner's rights or Contractor's duties under the other terms of this Agreement or under applicable law. The cancellation, expiration, or exhaustion of any of the insurance required above shall not preclude Owner from recovery against Contractor for any liability arising under this Agreement or under law.
- P. Automatic Reformation to Conform to Law. The parties intend this Agreement to comply with Texas law. Accordingly, the parties agree that any legal limitations now or hereafter in effect and affecting the validity or enforceability of any provision of this Agreement are made a part hereof and shall operate to amend this Agreement to the minimum extent necessary to bring all provisions into conformity with the requirements of such limitations and, as so modified, this Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.
- Q. Term of Insurance Requirements. All of the foregoing insurance requirements shall survive termination of this Agreement. All required insurance shall continue for at least thirty (30) days after final completion of the Work, to include performance of all warranty work.

### III. WORKERS' COMPENSATION INSURANCE COVERAGE

#### A. Definitions.

- i. Certificate of Coverage ("Certificate") - A copy of a certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, or a coverage agreement DWC-81, DWC-82, DWC-83, or DWC-84, showing statutory

- Workers' Compensation Insurance coverage for the person's or entity's employees providing services on a project, for the duration of the project.
- ii. **Duration of the Project** - Includes the time from the beginning of the Work on the Project until the Contractor's/person's Work on the Project has been completed and accepted by the governmental entity and the warranty period has expired.
  - iii. **Persons Providing Services on the Project ("Subcontractor" in §406.096 of the Texas Labor Code)** - Includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the Contractor has undertaken to perform on the Project, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with the Contractor and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity which furnishes persons to provide services on the Project.
  - iv. **"Services"** - Include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. Services does not include activities unrelated to the Project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.
- B. The Contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all employees of the Contractor providing Services on the project, for the duration of the Project.
  - C. The Contractor must provide a certificate of coverage to the governmental entity prior to being awarded the Contract.
  - D. If the coverage period shown on the Contractor's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project, the Contractor must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with the governmental entity showing that coverage has been extended.
  - E. The Contractor shall obtain from each person providing Services on a project, and provide to the governmental entity:
    - i. a certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning Work on the Project, so the governmental entity will have on file certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing Services on the Project; and
    - ii. no later than seven (7) days after receipt by the Contractor, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project.
  - F. The Contractor shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the Project and for one (1) year thereafter.
  - G. The Contractor shall notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the Contractor knew or should have known, of any change

that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing Services on the Project.

- H. The Contractor shall post on each Project site a notice, in the text, form, and manner prescribed by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing Services on the project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.
- I. The Contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on a Project, to:
  - i. provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all of its employees providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project;
  - ii. provide to the Contractor, prior to that person beginning work on the Project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project;
  - iii. provide the Contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;
  - iv. obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to the Contractor:
    - (1) a certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning work on the Project; and
    - (2) a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;
  - v. retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the Project and for one (1) year thereafter;
  - vi. notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project; and
  - vii. contractually require each person with whom it contracts, to perform as required by Paragraphs III.I.i through III.I.vi., with the certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.
- J. By signing this Contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the Contractor is representing to the governmental entity that all employees of the Contractor who will provide Services on the project will be covered by Workers' Compensation coverage for the duration of the project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the Commission's Division of Self-

Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the Contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

- K. The Contractor's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of Contract by the Contractor which entitles the governmental entity to declare the Contract void if the Contractor does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from the governmental entity.

**IV. BONDS under INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS is revised to add the following:**

It is further agreed by the Parties to this Contract that Contractor will execute the Bonds required under the Instructions to Bidders for the satisfactory performance of the Work, the fulfillment of any guarantees required, and the prompt payment to all persons supplying labor and materials in the prosecution of the Work, in accordance with this Contract on the forms provided for this purpose; and it is agreed that this Contract shall not be in effect until such **Bonds** are furnished and approved by Owner. Upon increase of the Contract Price authorized by Change Order, Contractor shall immediately provide revised **Bonds** for such increased Contract Price. Contractor's failure to provide compliant **Bonds** may be grounds for immediate termination regardless of whether the Contractor has started work on the Project.

All **Bonds** shall be in the form prescribed by the Contract Documents except as required otherwise by Laws or Regulations, and shall be executed by such sureties as are named in the current list of "Companies Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Sureties on Federal Bonds and as Acceptable Reinsuring Companies" as published in Circular 570 (amended) by the Bureau of Fiscal Service, Surety Bond Branch, United States Department of the Treasury. All **Bonds** signed by an agent must be accompanied by a certified copy of the agent's authority to act.

The person executing the bonds must be a licensed Texas local recording agent and such licensing must be recorded in the files of the Texas Department of Insurance.

If the surety on any **Bond** furnished by Contractor is declared bankrupt or becomes insolvent or its right to do business is terminated in any state where any part of the project is located or it ceases to meet the requirements herein Contractor shall promptly notify Contractor, Owner, and Engineer and shall, within ten (10) calendar days after the event giving rise to such notification, provide another **Bond** and surety to fulfill the required obligations.

**V. PREVAILING WAGE RATE SCALE.** Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code provides that any political subdivision of the State of Texas shall ascertain the general prevailing wage rate received by the classes of workers employed on projects similar to this Project and shall specify in the call for bids and in the Contract the minimum wage rates which shall be paid for each type of Worker. This statute further provides that the Contractor or subcontractors shall pay a penalty to the Owner of Sixty Dollars (\$60) for each Worker employed for each calendar day or part for the day that the Worker is paid less than the wage rates stipulated in the Contract. The Owner is authorized to withhold from the Contractor the amount of this penalty from any payment due under the Contract.

The statute also requires that the Contractor and subcontractors keep an accurate record of the names and occupations of all persons employed by them in the construction of the Project and to

show the actual per diem wages paid to each Worker. These records shall be open to the inspection of the Owner.

The minimum wage rates that apply to this Contract are those shown in the Attachment A.

- VI. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES.** The Contractor and the Owner agree that time is of the essence of this Contract. The Contractor and the Owner agree that a breach of this Contract by failure to complete the Work in the specified time will cause harm to the Owner, and further agree that the harm the Owner would sustain and the actual measure of damages the Owner would incur from the breach are incapable or very difficult of ascertainment. Therefore, the Contractor and the Owner agree that for each and every calendar day the Work or any portion thereof shall remain uncompleted after the expiration of the time limit(s) set in the Contract, or as extended under the provisions of these General Conditions (including, without limitation, due to a delay caused by Contractor's failure to comply with the Contract Documents or due to Owner's termination of Contractor for default under the Contract Documents), Contractor shall be liable to Owner for liquidated damages in the amount of [\$1,000] for each such calendar day, which sum the Parties agree is a reasonable forecast of the damages the Owner will sustain per day that the Work remains uncompleted and in no way constitutes a penalty. The Owner shall have the option to deduct and withhold said amount from any monies that the Owner owes the Contractor or its sureties or to recover such amount from the Contractor or the sureties on the Contractor's bond.

ECONOMIC DISINCENTIVE. The Contractor and the Owner agree that time is of the essence of this Contract. Therefore, the Contractor and the Owner agree that for each and every calendar day the Work or any portion thereof shall remain uncompleted after the expiration of the time limit(s) set in the Contract, or as extended under the provisions of these General Conditions (including, without limitation, due to a delay caused by Contractor's failure to comply with the Contract Documents or due to Owner's termination of Contractor for default under the Contract Documents), Contractor shall be liable to Owner for [\$1,000] day in economic disincentive damages pursuant to Section 49.271(e), Texas Water Code. Owner may elect to withhold Liquidated Damages or Economic Disincentive damages, but Owner may not collect on both Liquidated Damages and Economic Disincentive damages.

- VII. WAIVER OF CHAPTER 2272 CLAIMS PROCEDURES.** Owner and Contractor mutually agree that Chapter 2272 of Subtitle F, Title 10, of the Government Code ("Chapter 2272"), shall not apply to the Work. Owner and Contractor waive the application of Chapter 2272, if any, to the Contract. Instead, Owner and Contractor agree to follow the claims procedures in the General Conditions of the Contract Documents.

- VIII. ARTICLE I. DEFINITIONS under GENERAL CONDITIONS** is revised to add the following definitions:

Contracting Information means the following:

- (1) information in a voucher or contract relating to the receipt or expenditure of public funds by a governmental body;
- (2) solicitation or bid documents relating to a contract with a governmental body;
- (3) communications sent between a governmental body and a vendor, contractor, potential vendor, or potential contractor during the solicitation, evaluation, or negotiation of a contract;

- (4) documents, including bid tabulations, showing the criteria by which a governmental body evaluates each vendor, contractor, potential vendor, or potential contractor responding to a solicitation and, if applicable, an explanation of why the vendor or contractor was selected; and
- (5) communications and other information sent between a governmental body and a vendor or contractor related to the performance of a final contract with the governmental body or work performed on behalf of the governmental body.

**IX. ARTICLE I. DEFINITIONS under GENERAL CONDITIONS is modified as follows:**

The definition of Contract includes the Agreement and Contract Documents. The definition of Contract Documents includes the Contract. The Instructions to Bidders is a part of the Contract Documents.

**X. ARTICLE II. CONTRACT DOCUMENTS under GENERAL CONDITIONS is revised to add the following section:**

Section 2.02. CONTRACTING INFORMATION. If the Contract Price is equal to or greater than \$1,000,000, Contractor, pursuant to the Government Code Section 552.372, shall:

- (1) preserve all Contracting Information related to the Contract as provided by the records retention requirements applicable to the Owner for the duration of the Contract;
- (2) promptly provide to the Owner any Contracting Information related to the Contract that is in the custody or possession of the Contractor on request of the Owner; and
- (3) on Final Completion of the Contract, provide at no cost to Owner all Contracting Information related to the Contract that is in the custody or possession of the Contractor or preserve the Contracting Information related to this Contract as provided by the records retention requirements of the Owner.

**The requirements of Subchapter J, Chapter 552, Government Code, may apply to this Bid and/or Contract and the Contractor agrees that the Contract can be terminated if the Contractor knowingly or intentionally fails to comply with a requirement of that subchapter.**

**XI. HOUSE BILL 89 VERIFICATION.** By signing and entering into this Agreement, Contractor verifies, pursuant to the Government Code Section 2271.002, it does not boycott Israel and will not boycott Israel during the term of this Agreement.

**XII. ANTI-TERRORISM VERIFICATION.** Contractor hereby represents and warrants that at the time of this Agreement neither Contractor, nor any wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of Contractor: (i) engages in business with Iran, Sudan, or any foreign terrorist organization pursuant to Chapters 806 or 807 of the Texas Government Code, or Subchapter F of Chapter 2252 of the Texas Government Code; or (ii) is a company listed by the Texas Comptroller pursuant to Sections 806.051, 807.051, or 2252.153 of the Texas Government Code. The term “foreign terrorist organization” has the meaning assigned to such term pursuant to Section 2252.151 of the Texas Government Code.

**ATTACHMENT A – PREVAILING WAGE RATE**

RESOLUTION ADOPTING PREVAILING WAGE RATE SCALE FOR  
CONSTRUCTION

WHEREAS, Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 2 of Medina County (the "District"), has been legally created and operates pursuant to the general laws of the State of Texas applicable to conservation and reclamation districts; and

WHEREAS, Chapter 2258, Texas Government Code, Prevailing Wage Rates ("Chapter 2258"), requires a public body to determine the general prevailing wage rate for classes of workers in the locality in which a public work project is to be performed; and

WHEREAS, Chapter 2258 authorizes the Board of Supervisors (the "Board") of the District to adopt prevailing wage rates establishing minimum rates to be paid by all contractors and subcontractors in connection with all District construction projects; and

WHEREAS, because the District is located in Medina and Bexar County, Texas Water Code § 49.279 allows the District to determine the District's prevailing wage rates by adopting the prevailing wage rates of Bexar County; and

WHEREAS, the Board concurs that it is in the best interests of the District to adopt the prevailing wage rates of Williamson County; Now, Therefore,

BE IT RESOLVED BY THE BOARD OF SUPERVISORS OF REDBIRD RANCH FRESH WATER SUPPLY DISTRICT NO. 2 THAT:

Section 1: The Board hereby adopts the prevailing wage rates previously adopted and utilized by Bexar County for Medina County and Bexar County public work projects. When, and to the extent, Bexar County amends its prevailing wage rates, such amended rates shall be considered the prevailing wage rates of the District effective upon such amendment by Bexar County. Nothing in this Resolution Adopting Prevailing Wage Rates in any way prohibits the payment to workers of amounts greater than the prevailing wage rates adopted by the District.

Section 2: Contractors and subcontractors on District construction projects shall be responsible to ascertain the then-current prevailing wage rates adopted and utilized by Bexar County, obtain a copy of same from Bexar County, and to pay at least such minimum wage rates for the classes of workers described therein.

Section 3: The District's engineer is hereby directed and authorized to include this Resolution Adopting Prevailing Wage Rates in: 1) the call for the bids for District construction contracts, and 2) in the District construction contracts themselves.



PASSED AND APPROVED this 13th day of August 2020.

/s/ Aaron Parenica

Vice President, Board of Supervisors

ATTEST:

/s/ John Moake

Secretary, Board of Supervisors

(SEAL)



[illegible]

1. The Board of Supervisors of Redbird Ranch Fresh Water Supply District No. 2 of Medina County convened in regular session on August 13, 2020, and the roll was called of the members of the Board:

and all of said persons were present except Supervisor Kent, thus constituting a quorum. Whereupon, among other business, the following was transacted at the meeting: a written

was introduced for the consideration of the Board. It was then duly moved and seconded that the resolution be adopted, and, after due discussion, the motion, carrying with it the adoption of the resolution, prevailed and carried unanimously.

SIGNED AND SEALED on August 13, 2020.

(SEAL)



**END OF SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF THE AGREEMENT PART A**

**SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF THE AGREEMENT  
PART B**

1. Name and Location of Project.

Work covered by these Technical Specifications is entitled "Construction of Water, Sanitary Sewer, Street and Drainage Improvements and related appurtenances for Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Units 2M-2, Medina County, Texas."

2. Description of Work.

- a. Under this Contract, Contractor shall furnish all materials, appliances, tools, equipment, transportation, services, and all labor and superintendence necessary for the construction of the Work as described in these Technical Specifications and as shown on the Plans. The completed installation shall not lack any part that can be reasonably implied as necessary to its proper functioning or any subsidiary item that is customarily furnished, and Contractor shall deliver the installation to Owner in operating condition.
- b. The Work, in general, under this Contract includes the purchase, installation, and construction of all structures, equipment, and materials, including appurtenances, as indicated on the Plans.

Major items of construction and services required are designated as follows:

- (1) Install and adjust waterlines, valves, valve boxes, flushing valves, fittings, and appurtenances.
- (2) Construct and adjust sanitary sewer, manholes and appurtenances.
- (3) Repair existing pavement affected.
- (4) Furnish and install all subsidiary items as necessary to complete the project.
- (5) Perform testing as specified on installed lines; and
- (6) Clean-up project area upon completion.

3. Technical Specifications.

- a. Technical Specifications are of the abbreviated, simplified or streamlined type and include incomplete sentences. The omission of words or phrases such as "Contractor shall," "in conformity therewith," "shall be," "as noted on Plans," "according to Plans," "a," "an," "the," and "all," are intentional. Omitted words or phrases shall be supplied by inference in same manner as they are when a "note" occurs on Plans.
- b. The Technical Specifications are interpreted to require that Contractor shall provide all items, articles, materials, operation, or methods listed, mentioned, or scheduled either on Plans or specified herein, or both, including all labor, materials, equipment, and incidentals necessary and required for their completion.
- c. Whenever the words "designated," "submitted," "observed," or similar words or phrases are used, it shall be assumed that the word "Engineer" follows the verb as the object of the clause, such as "observed by Engineer."
- d. All references to standard Technical Specifications or manufacturer's installation directions shall mean the latest edition thereof on the date BIDS are due unless specifically noted otherwise.

- e. Reference to technical society, organization or body is made in Technical Specifications in accordance with following abbreviations:

AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
ACI	American Concrete Institute
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
AWWA	American Waterworks Association
FS	Federal Specifications
PCA	Portland Cement Association
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
NEC	National Electric Code
UL	Underwriters' Laboratories
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
API	American Petroleum Institute
IPCEA	Insulated Power Cable Engineers Association
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
AWS	American Welding Society
PCI	Prestressed Concrete Institute
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
ANSI	American National Standards Institute (Formerly ASA)

- f. Some Technical Specification items cover construction requirements and materials in comprehensive manner, and only pertinent portions of these items apply.

4. Manufacturer's Representative.

When required by Technical Specifications provide the services of trained, qualified technicians to check final equipment installation, to assist as required in placing same in operation, and to instruct operating personnel in the proper manner of performing routine operation and maintenance of the equipment.

5. Plans.

**Sheet No. Title**

Reference Section 00 0115 – List of Drawing Sheets

**END OF SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF THE AGREEMENT PART B**

**SECTION 01 2000**  
**PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of applications for progress payments.
- B. Documentation of changes in Contract Sum and Contract Time.
- C. Change procedures.
- D. Correlation of Contractor submittals based on changes.
- E. Procedures for preparation and submittal of application for final payment.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Document 00 5200 - Agreement Form .
- B. Section 01 2100 - Allowances.
- C. Section 01 2200 - Unit Prices.
- D. Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.

**1.03 SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

- A. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit draft to Engineer for approval.
- B. Submit Schedule of Values in duplicate within 15 days after date of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
- C. Format: Utilize the Table of Contents of this Project Manual. Identify each line item with number and title of the specification section. Identify site mobilization.
- D. Include in each line item, the amount of Allowances specified in this section. For unit cost Allowances, identify quantities taken from Contract Documents multiplied by the unit cost to achieve the total for the item.
- E. Include within each line item, a direct proportional amount of Contractor's overhead and profit.
- F. Revise schedule to list approved Change Orders, with each Application For Payment.

**1.04 APPLICATIONS FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS**

- A. Payment Period: Submit at intervals stipulated in the Agreement.
- B. Electronic media printout including equivalent information will be considered in lieu of standard form specified; submit sample to Engineer for approval.
- C. Forms filled out by hand will not be accepted.
- D. For each item, provide a column for listing each of the following:
  - 1. Item Number.
  - 2. Description of work.
  - 3. Scheduled Values.
  - 4. Previous Applications.
  - 5. Work in Place and Stored Materials under this Application.
  - 6. Authorized Change Orders.
  - 7. Total Completed and Stored to Date of Application.

8. Percentage of Completion.
  9. Balance to Finish.
  10. Retainage.
- E. Execute certification by signature of authorized officer.
- F. Use data from approved Schedule of Values. Provide dollar value in each column for each line item for portion of work performed and for stored products.
- G. List each authorized Change Order as a separate line item, listing Change Order number and dollar amount as for an original item of work.
- H. Submit a minimum of five copies of each Application for Payment.
- I. Include the following with the application:
1. Transmittal letter.
  2. Construction progress schedule, revised and current.
  3. Current construction photographs, if required.
  4. Partial release of liens from major subcontractors and vendors.
  5. Any waivers.
  6. Project record documents, for review by Owner which will be returned to the Contractor.
  7. Affidavits attesting to off-site stored products.
- J. When Engineer requires substantiating information, submit data justifying dollar amounts in question. Provide one copy of data with cover letter for each copy of submittal. Show application number and date, and line item by number and description.

#### **1.05 MODIFICATION PROCEDURES**

- A. Submit name of the individual authorized to receive change documents and who will be responsible for informing others in Contractor's employ or subcontractors of changes to Contract Documents.
- B. For minor changes not involving an adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time, Engineer will issue instructions directly to Contractor.
- C. For other required changes, Engineer will issue a document signed by Owner instructing Contractor to proceed with the change, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
1. The document will describe the required changes and will designate method of determining any change in Contract Sum or Contract Time.
  2. Promptly execute the change.
- D. For changes for which advance pricing is desired, Engineer will issue a document that includes a detailed description of a proposed change with supplementary or revised drawings and specifications and the period of time during which the requested price will be considered valid. Contractor shall prepare and submit a fixed price quotation within five days.
- E. Contractor may propose a change by submitting a request for change to Engineer, describing the proposed change and its full effect on the work, with a statement describing the reason for the change, and the effect on the Contract Sum and Contract Time with full documentation. Document any requested substitutions in accordance with Section 01 6000.
- F. Computation of Change in Contract Amount: As specified in the Agreement and Conditions of the Contract.

1. For change requested by Engineer for work falling under a fixed price contract, the amount will be based on Contractor's price quotation.
  2. For change requested by Contractor, the amount will be based on the Contractor's request for a Change Order as approved by Engineer.
  3. For pre-determined unit prices and quantities, the amount will be based on the fixed unit prices.
  4. For change ordered by Engineer without a quotation from Contractor, the amount will be determined by Engineer based on the Contractor's substantiation of costs as specified for Time and Material work.
- G. Substantiation of Costs: Provide full information required for evaluation.
1. On request, provide the following data:
    - a. Quantities of products, labor, and equipment.
    - b. Taxes, insurance, and bonds.
    - c. Overhead and profit.
    - d. Justification for any change in Contract Time.
    - e. Credit for deletions from Contract, similarly documented.
  2. Support each claim for additional costs with additional information:
    - a. Origin and date of claim.
    - b. Dates and times work was performed, and by whom.
    - c. Time records and wage rates paid.
    - d. Invoices and receipts for products, equipment, and subcontracts, similarly documented.
  3. For Time and Material work, submit itemized account and supporting data after completion of change, within time limits indicated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- H. Execution of Change Orders: Engineer will issue Change Orders for signatures of parties as provided in the Conditions of the Contract.
- I. After execution of Change Order, promptly revise Schedule of Values and Application for Payment forms to record each authorized Change Order as a separate line item and adjust the Contract Sum.
- J. Promptly revise progress schedules to reflect any change in Contract Time, revise sub-schedules to adjust times for other items of work affected by the change, and resubmit.
- K. Promptly enter changes in Project Record Documents.

#### **1.06 APPLICATION FOR FINAL PAYMENT**

- A. Prepare Application for Final Payment as specified for progress payments, identifying total adjusted Contract Sum, previous payments, and sum remaining due.
- B. Application for Final Payment will not be considered until the following have been accomplished:
1. All closeout procedures specified in Section 01 7000.
  2. All plan of record drawings are provided.
  3. All warranty documents are provided.
  4. All owner's manuals are provided.
  5. All as-built drawings for public improvements are provided.
  6. All testing results are provided.
  7. All observation records are provided.



8. The owner's punch list has been completed.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 2100  
ALLOWANCES**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Cash allowances.
- B. Contingency allowance.
- C. Inspecting and testing allowances.
- D. Payment and modification procedures relating to allowances.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS - NOT USED****1.03 CASH ALLOWANCES**

- A. Costs Included in Cash Allowances: Cost of product to Contractor or subcontractor, less applicable trade discounts, less applicable taxes.
- B. Costs Not Included in Cash Allowances: Product delivery to site and handling at the site, including unloading, uncrating, and storage; protection of products from elements and from damage; and labor for installation and finishing.
- C. Engineer Responsibilities:
  - 1. Consult with Contractor for consideration and selection of products, suppliers, and installers.
  - 2. Select products in consultation with Owner and transmit decision to Contractor.
  - 3. Prepare Change Order.
- D. Contractor Responsibilities:
  - 1. Assist Engineer in selection of products, suppliers, and installers.
  - 2. Obtain proposals from suppliers and installers and offer recommendations.
  - 3. On notification of which products have been selected, execute purchase agreement with designated supplier and installer.
  - 4. Arrange for and process shop drawings, product data, and samples. Arrange for delivery.
  - 5. Promptly inspect products upon delivery for completeness, damage, and defects. Submit claims for transportation damage.
- E. Differences in costs will be adjusted by Change Order.

**1.04 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCE**

- A. Contractor's costs for products, delivery, installation, labor, insurance, payroll, taxes, bonding, equipment rental, overhead and profit will be included in Change Orders authorizing expenditure of funds from this Contingency Allowance.
- B. Funds will be drawn from the Contingency Allowance only by Change Order.
- C. At closeout of Contract, funds remaining in Contingency Allowance will be credited to Owner by Change Order.

**1.05 INSPECTING AND TESTING ALLOWANCES**

- A. Costs Included in Inspecting and Testing Allowances: Cost of engaging an inspecting or testing agency; execution of inspecting and tests; and reporting results.
- B. Payment Procedures:

1. Submit one copy of the inspecting or testing firm's invoice with next application for payment.
  2. Pay invoice on approval by Engineer.
- C. Differences in cost will be adjusted by Change Order.

**1.06 ALLOWANCES SCHEDULE**

- A. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the stipulated sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for purchase and delivery of \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the stipulated sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for purchase and delivery of \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the stipulated sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for installation of \_\_\_\_\_.
- D. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the stipulated sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for installation of \_\_\_\_\_.
- E. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the stipulated sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for purchase, delivery, and installation of \_\_\_\_\_.
- F. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the stipulated sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for purchase, delivery, and installation of \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the unit price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per \_\_\_\_\_ for purchase, delivery, and installation of \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Section \_\_\_\_\_ - \_\_\_\_\_: Include the unit price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per \_\_\_\_\_ for purchase, delivery, and installation of \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. Contingency Allowance: Include the stipulated sum/price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for use upon Owner's instructions.
- J. Inspecting and Testing Allowance: Include the sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for payment of inspecting services specified in Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements.
- K. Soils Testing Allowance: Include the sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for testing compacted soils.
- L. Concrete Testing Allowance: Include the sum of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ for testing concrete.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED****END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 01 2200

## UNIT PRICES

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. List of unit prices, for use in preparing Bids.
- B. Measurement and payment criteria applicable to Work performed under a unit price payment method.
- C. Defect assessment and non-payment for rejected work.

## 1.02 COSTS INCLUDED

- A. Unit Prices included on the Bid Form shall include full compensation for all required labor, products, tools, equipment, plant, transportation, services and incidentals; erection, application or installation of an item of the Work; overhead and profit.

## 1.03 UNIT QUANTITIES SPECIFIED

- A. Quantities indicated in the Bid Form are for bidding and contract purposes only. Quantities and measurements of actual Work will determine the payment amount.

## 1.04 MEASUREMENT OF QUANTITIES

- A. Measurement methods delineated in the individual specification sections complement the criteria of this section. In the event of conflict, the requirements of the individual specification section govern.
- B. Take all measurements and compute quantities from the drawings.
- C. Assist by providing necessary equipment, workers, and survey personnel as required.
- D. Measurement Devices:
  - 1. Weigh Scales: Inspected, tested and certified by the applicable state Weights and Measures department within the past year.
  - 2. Platform Scales: Of sufficient size and capacity to accommodate the conveying vehicle.
  - 3. Metering Devices: Inspected, tested and certified by the applicable state department within the past year.
- E. Measurement by Weight: Concrete reinforcing steel, rolled or formed steel or other metal shapes will be measured by handbook weights. Welded assemblies will be measured by handbook or scale weight.
- F. Measurement by Volume: Measured by cubic dimension using mean length, width and height or thickness.
- G. Measurement by Area: Measured by square dimension using mean length and width or radius.
- H. Linear Measurement: Measured by linear dimension, at the item centerline or mean chord.
- I. Stipulated Price Measurement: Items measured by weight, volume, area, or linear means or combination, as appropriate, as a completed item or unit of the Work.
- J. Perform surveys required to determine quantities, including control surveys to establish measurement reference lines. Notify Engineer of any discrepancies.
- K. Contractor's Responsibilities: Sign surveyor's field notes or keep duplicate field notes, calculate and certify quantities for payment purposes.

**1.05 PAYMENT**

- A. Payment for Work governed by unit prices will be made on the basis of the actual measurements and quantities of Work that is incorporated in or made necessary by the Work and accepted by the Engineer, multiplied by the unit price.
- B. Payment will not be made for any of the following:
  - 1. Products wasted or disposed of in a manner that is not acceptable.
  - 2. Products determined as unacceptable before or after placement.
  - 3. Products not completely unloaded from the transporting vehicle.
  - 4. Products placed beyond the lines and levels of the required Work.
  - 5. Products remaining on hand after completion of the Work.
  - 6. Loading, hauling, and disposing of rejected Products.

**1.06 DEFECT ASSESSMENT**

- A. Replace Work, or portions of the Work, not complying with specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Engineer, it is not practical to remove and replace the Work, Engineer will direct one of the following remedies:
  - 1. The defective Work may remain, but the unit price will be adjusted to a new unit price at the discretion of Engineer.
  - 2. The defective Work will be partially repaired to the instructions of the Engineer, and the unit price will be adjusted to a new unit price at the discretion of Engineer.
- C. The individual specification sections may modify these options or may identify a specific formula or percentage price reduction.
- D. The authority of Owner to assess the defect and identify payment adjustment is final.

**1.07 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES**

- A. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- C. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- D. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- E. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- F. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- G. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- H. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- I. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.
- J. Item: \_\_\_\_\_; Section \_\_\_\_\_.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED****END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3000**  
**ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Electronic document submittal service.
- B. Preconstruction meeting.
- C. Site mobilization meeting.
- D. Progress meetings.
- E. Construction progress schedule.
- F. Progress photographs.
- G. Coordination drawings.
- H. Submittals for review, information, and project closeout.
- I. Number of copies of submittals.
- J. Submittal procedures.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 3216 - Construction Progress Schedule.
- B. Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements.
- C. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals.

**1.03 PROJECT COORDINATOR**

- A. Cooperate with the Project Manager in allocation of mobilization areas of site; for field offices and sheds, for site access, traffic, and parking facilities.
- B. During construction, coordinate use of site and facilities through the Project Manager.
- C. Comply with Project Manager's procedures for intra-project communications; submittals, reports and records, schedules, coordination drawings, and recommendations; and resolution of ambiguities and conflicts.
- D. Comply with instructions of the Project Manager for use of temporary utilities and construction facilities.
- E. Coordinate field engineering and layout work under instructions of the Project Manager.
- F. Make the following types of submittals to Engineer through the Project Manager:
  - 1. Requests for Interpretation.
  - 2. Requests for substitution.
  - 3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  - 4. Test and inspection reports.
  - 5. Design data.
  - 6. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports.
  - 7. Applications for payment and change order requests.
  - 8. Progress schedules.
  - 9. Coordination drawings.
  - 10. Closeout submittals.
  - 11. Plan of record drawings.

12. As-built utility drawings.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 ELECTRONIC DOCUMENT SUBMITTAL SERVICE**

- A. All documents transmitted for purposes of administration of the contract are to be in electronic (PDF, MS Word, or MS Excel) format, as appropriate to the document, and transmitted via an Internet-based submittal service that receives, logs and stores documents, provides electronic stamping and signatures, and notifies addressees via email.
  1. Besides submittals for review, information, and closeout, this procedure applies to Requests for Interpretation (RFIs), progress documentation, contract modification documents (e.g. supplementary instructions, change proposals, change orders), applications for payment, field reports and meeting minutes, Contractor's correction punchlist, and any other document any participant wishes to make part of the project record.
  2. Contractor and Engineer are required to use this service.
  3. It is Contractor's responsibility to submit documents in allowable format.
  4. Subcontractors, suppliers, and Engineer's consultants will be permitted to use the service at no extra charge.
  5. Users of the service need an email address, internet access, and PDF review software that includes ability to mark up and apply electronic stamps (such as Adobe Acrobat, [www.adobe.com](http://www.adobe.com), or Bluebeam PDF Revu, [www.bluebeam.com](http://www.bluebeam.com)), unless such software capability is provided by the service provider.
  6. Paper document transmittals will not be reviewed; emailed electronic documents will not be reviewed.
  7. All other specified submittal and document transmission procedures apply, except that electronic document requirements do not apply to samples or color selection charts.
- B. Cost: The cost of the service will be paid by Owner.
- C. Cost: The cost of the service is to be paid by Contractor; include the cost of the service in the Contract Sum.
- D. Submittal Service: The selected service is:
  1. Submittal Exchange (tel: 1-800-714-0024): [www.submittalexchange.com/#sle](http://www.submittalexchange.com/#sle).
- E. Training: One, one-hour, web-based training session will be arranged for all participants, with representatives of Engineer and Contractor participating; further training is the responsibility of the user of the service.
- F. Project Closeout: Engineer will determine when to terminate the service for the project and is responsible for obtaining archive copies of files for Owner.

### **3.02 PRE-CONSTRUCTION MEETING**

- A. Owner will schedule a meeting after Notice of Award.
- B. Engineer will schedule a meeting after Notice of Award.
- C. Attendance Required:
  1. Owner.
  2. Engineer.
  3. Contractor.

- D. Contractor will schedule and administer a pre-construction meeting within 15 days after date of Notice to Proceed.
- E. Location: A central site, convenient for all parties, provided by Contractor.
- F. Attendance
  - 1. Owner's Representative.
  - 2. Engineer's Representative.
  - 3. Contractor's Superintendent.
  - 4. Others as appropriate.
- G. Agenda:
  - 1. Execution of Owner-Contractor Agreement.
  - 2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
  - 3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
  - 4. Submission of list of subcontractors, list of products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.
  - 5. Designation of personnel representing the parties to Contract.
  - 6. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
  - 7. Scheduling.
  - 8. Scheduling activities of Subcontractors.
  - 9. Contractor's progress and schedule chart.
  - 10. Review of required submittals.
  - 11. Processing of applications for payment.
  - 12. Critical work sequencing.
  - 13. Equipment and supply deliveries.
  - 14. Storage areas, security housekeeping and Owner's needs.
- H. Record minutes and distribute copies within three days after meeting to participants, with one copy each to Engineer, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

### **3.03 SITE MOBILIZATION MEETING**

- A. Contractor will schedule a meeting at the Project site prior to Contractor occupancy.
- B. Attendance Required:
  - 1. Contractor.
  - 2. Owner.
  - 3. Engineer.
  - 4. Special consultants.
  - 5. Contractor's superintendent.
  - 6. Major subcontractors.
  - 7. Architect.
- C. Agenda:
  - 1. Use of premises by Owner and Contractor.
  - 2. Owner's requirements.
  - 3. Construction facilities and controls provided by Owner.
  - 4. Temporary utilities provided by Owner.
  - 5. Survey and building layout.
  - 6. Security and housekeeping procedures.



7. Schedules.
  8. Application for payment procedures.
  9. Procedures for testing.
  10. Procedures for maintaining record documents.
  11. Requirements for start-up of equipment.
  12. Inspection and acceptance of equipment put into service during construction period.
- D. Record minutes and distribute copies within three days after meeting to participants, with one copy each to Engineer, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

### **3.04 PROGRESS MEETINGS**

- A. Schedule and administer meetings throughout progress of the work at maximum bi-monthly intervals.
- B. Make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.
- C. Contractor will make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.
- D. Attendance Required: Job superintendent, major Subcontractors and suppliers, Owner, Architect, Engineer, as appropriate to agenda topics for each meeting.
- E. Agenda:
1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
  2. Review of work progress.
  3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.
  4. Identification of problems that impede, or will impede, planned progress.
  5. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
  6. Review of off-site fabrication and delivery schedules.
  7. Maintenance of progress schedule.
  8. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
  9. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
  10. Coordination of projected progress.
  11. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
  12. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
  13. Other business relating to work.
- F. Record minutes and distribute copies within three days after meeting to participants, with one copy each to Engineer, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

### **3.05 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

- A. Refer to Section 01 3216.
- B. If preliminary schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within five days.
- C. Within five days after review of preliminary schedule, submit draft of proposed complete schedule for review.
1. Include written certification that major Subcontractors have reviewed and accepted proposed schedule.
- D. Within three days after joint review, submit complete schedule.
- E. Submit updated schedule every 14 days.

**3.06 PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS**

- A. Submit new photographs at least once a month, within 3 days after being taken.
- B. Maintain one set of all photographs at project site for reference; same copies as submitted, identified as such.
- C. Photography Type: Digital; electronic files.
- D. Provide photographs of site and construction throughout progress of Work produced by an experienced photographer, acceptable to Owner.
- E. In addition to periodic, recurring views, take photographs of each of the following events:
  - 1. Completion of site clearing.
  - 2. Excavations in progress.
  - 3. Foundations in progress and upon completion.
  - 4. Structural framing in progress and upon completion.
  - 5. Enclosure of building, upon completion.
  - 6. Final completion, minimum of ten (10) photos.
- F. Take photographs as evidence of existing project conditions.
- G. Digital Photographs: 24 bit color, minimum resolution of 1024 by 768, in JPG format; provide files unaltered by photo editing software.
  - 1. Delivery Medium: Via email.
  - 2. File Naming: Include project identification, date and time of view, and view identification.
  - 3. PDF File: Assemble all photos into printable pages in PDF format, with 2 to 3 photos per page, each photo labeled with file name; one PDF file per submittal.

**3.07 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

- A. Provide information required by Project Manager for preparation of coordination drawings.
- B. Review drawings prior to submission to Engineer or Architect.

**3.08 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW**

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for review:
  - 1. Product data.
  - 2. Shop drawings.
  - 3. Samples for selection.
  - 4. Samples for verification.
  - 5. Other, as required.
- B. Submit to Engineer for review for the limited purpose of checking for compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in Contract Documents.
- C. Samples will be reviewed for aesthetic, color, or finish selection.
- D. After review, provide copies and distribute in accordance with SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES.

**3.09 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION**

- A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for information:
  - 1. Design data.
  - 2. Sustainability design submittals and reports.
  - 3. Certificates.
  - 4. Test reports.

5. Inspection reports.
  6. Manufacturer's instructions.
  7. Manufacturer's field reports.
  8. Other types indicated.
- B. Submit for Engineer's knowledge as contract administrator or for Owner.

**3.10 SUBMITTALS FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT**

- A. Submit Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- B. Submit Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
- C. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them at project closeout in compliance with requirements of Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals:
1. Project record documents.
  2. Operation and maintenance data.
  3. Warranties.
  4. Bonds.
  5. Other types as indicated.
- D. Submit for Owner's benefit during and after project completion.

**3.11 NUMBER OF COPIES OF SUBMITTALS**

- A. Documents for Review:
1. Small Size Sheets, Not Larger Than 8-1/2 by 11 inches: Submit the number of copies that Contractor requires, plus two copies that will be retained by Engineer.
  2. Larger Sheets, Not Larger Than 36 x 48 inches: Submit the number of copies that Contractor requires, plus one copy that will be retained by Engineer.
- B. Documents for Information: Submit one copy.
- C. Documents for Project Closeout: Make one reproduction of submittal originally reviewed. Submit two extra of submittals for information.
- D. Samples: Submit the number specified in individual specification sections; one of which will be retained by Engineer.
1. After review, produce duplicates.
  2. Retained samples will not be returned to Contractor unless specifically so stated.

**3.12 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. General Requirements:
- B. Transmit each submittal with approved form.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3050.10****SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES****PART 1-GENERAL****1.01 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit two prints of all Shop Drawings until final acceptance. One print will be returned to the General Contractor after Engineer's review.
- B. Submit a minimum of four copies of all Product Data until final acceptance. Three copies of the Product Data will be returned to the General Contractor after Engineer's review.
- C. Submit a minimum of duplicates of all Samples. Additional samples may be required for specific items for coordination of finishes.
- D. Submit additional copies of Samples and Product Data as necessary for distribution to subcontractors. Contractor shall obtain and distribute required prints of Shop Drawings made from reviewed and stamped reproducible. Exact number of copies of Product Data, Samples and Shop Drawings to be submitted shall be established in the pre-construction conference.
- E. Contractor shall review and stamp with his approval all submittals. Any submittals which do not bear the Contractor's approval stamp shall be returned without review.
- F. Where printed materials describe more than one product or model, clearly identify which is to be furnished.
- G. Shop Drawings shall not be reproductions of Contract Documents.
- H. Contractor shall make any corrections noted on Engineer's reviewed copies of submittals and shall resubmit the required number of corrected copies of Shop Drawings and Product Data or new Samples.
- I. Each Shop Drawing, Sample and Product Data submittal shall be properly identified bearing the name and quality of the material, the manufacturer's name, the Contractor's name, the Subcontractor's name, the name of the Project and the date of submission, and referenced to the applicable Specification Section.
- J. Engineer's checking of Shop Drawings, Samples or Product Data which deviates from the Contract Documents does not authorize changes to the Contract Sum. Submit in writing at the time of submission any changes to the Contract Sum affected by such Shop Drawings, Samples or Product Data, otherwise, claim for extras will not be considered.
- K. Submit schedule of Shop Drawing and Sample Submittals within 15 days after notice to proceed.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3119.10****PROJECT MEETINGS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.01 PRE-CONSTRUCTION MEETING**

- A. Contractor will schedule and administer a pre-construction meeting within 15 days after date of Notice to Proceed.
- B. Location: A central site, convenient for all parties, provided by Contractor.
- C. Attendance
  - 1. Owner's Representative.
  - 2. Engineer's Representative.
  - 3. Contractor's Superintendent.
  - 4. Others as appropriate.
- D. Agenda
  - 1. Contractor's progress and schedule chart.
  - 2. Review of required submittals.
  - 3. Processing of applications for payment.
  - 4. Critical work sequencing.
  - 5. Equipment and supply deliveries.
  - 6. Storage areas, security housekeeping and Owner's needs.
  - 7. Record minutes and distribute copies within three days after meeting to participants, with one copy each to Engineer, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

**1.02 PROGRESS MEETINGS**

- A. Contractor shall schedule regular periodic meetings, as required.
- B. Hold called meetings as required by progress of the work.
- C. Attendance:
  - 1. Engineer's Representative.
  - 2. Suppliers as appropriate to the agenda.
  - 3. Others as appropriate.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3216**  
**CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Preliminary schedule.
- B. Construction progress schedule, bar chart type.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS -- NOT USED****1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AGC (CPSM) - Construction Planning and Scheduling Manual; 2004.
- B. M-H (CPM) - CPM in Construction Management - Project Management with CPM; 2015.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Within 10 days after date established in Notice to Proceed, submit preliminary schedule to the Owner and Engineer for approval, a practical work schedule, showing the order in which the Contractor proposes to carry on the work and the time at which the several salient features will be started and completed.
- B. If the schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within 5 days.
- C. Submit updated schedule every 14 days.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Scheduler: Contractor's personnel or specialist Consultant specializing in CPM scheduling with experience in scheduling construction work of a complexity comparable to this Project, and having use of computer facilities capable of delivering a detailed graphic printout within 48 hours of request.

**1.06 SCHEDULE FORMAT**

- A. Listings: In chronological order according to the start date for each activity. Identify each activity with the applicable specification section number.
- B. Minimum Sheet Size: Multiples of 8-1/2 x 11 inches.
- C. Scale and Spacing: To allow for notations and revisions.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE**

- A. Prepare preliminary schedule in the form of a horizontal bar chart.

**3.02 CONTENT**

- A. Show complete sequence of construction by activity, with dates for beginning and completion of each element of construction.
- B. Identify each item by specification section number.
- C. Identify work of separate stages and other logically grouped activities.
- D. Provide sub-schedules for each stage of Work.
- E. Provide sub-schedules to define critical portions of the entire schedule.
- F. Include conferences and meetings in schedule.

- G. Show accumulated percentage of completion of each item, and total percentage of Work completed, as of the first day of each month.
- H. Provide separate schedule of submittal dates for shop drawings, product data, and samples, owner-furnished products, products identified under Allowances, and dates reviewed submittals will be required from Engineer. Indicate decision dates for selection of finishes.
- I. Indicate delivery dates for owner-furnished products and products identified under Allowances.
- J. Coordinate content with schedule of values.
- K. Provide legend for symbols and abbreviations used.
- L. Include a separate bar for each major portion of Work or operation.

### **3.03 REVIEW AND EVALUATION OF SCHEDULE**

- A. Participate in joint review and evaluation of schedule with Owner at each submittal.
- B. Evaluate project status to determine work behind schedule and work ahead of schedule.
- C. After review, revise as necessary as result of review, and resubmit within 5 days.

### **3.04 UPDATING SCHEDULE**

- A. Maintain schedules to record actual start and finish dates of completed activities.
- B. Indicate progress of each activity to date of revision, with projected completion date of each activity.
- C. Update diagrams to graphically depict current status of Work.
- D. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in Work, and other identifiable changes.
- E. Indicate changes required to maintain Date of Substantial Completion.
- F. Submit reports required to support recommended changes.
- G. Provide narrative report to define problem areas, anticipated delays, and impact on the schedule. Report corrective action taken or proposed and its effect.

### **3.05 DISTRIBUTION OF SCHEDULE**

- A. Distribute copies of updated schedules to Contractor's project site file, to subcontractors, suppliers, Engineer, Owner, and other concerned parties.
- B. Instruct recipients to promptly report, in writing, problems anticipated by projections indicated in schedules.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3217**

**DAILY CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS REPORT**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 CONTRACT**

- A. The Contractor shall submit to the Project Manager, Daily Reports, wherein the following data is provided relative to his Work and the Work of his Subcontractors:
1. Location and description of work being performed.
  2. Problems, if any, encountered during the course of the day's work.
  3. Number of personnel on job for Contractor and each Subcontractor (broken down as to the number of journeymen, apprentices, etc.).
  4. Temperature and weather conditions.
  5. Discrepancies, if any, noted in Plans and Specifications.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 01 3233.10  
CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS**

- A. Construction progress photographs shall be taken once a month with the time, direction of view and vantage points as directed by the Engineer.
- B. Photograph from locations to adequately illustrate the condition of construction and the state of the Project.
  - 1. At successive periods of photography, take at least one photograph from the same overall view as previously.
  - 2. Consult with Engineer at each period of photography for instructions concerning the views required.
- C. Three photographs shall be taken each month by a professional photographer and shall be 8" x 11", double weight paper, color glossy finish, sharp and clearly showing details.
- D. All photographs shall be identified on the back with Project name, date, location and view of vantage point.
- E. Furnish two prints of each photograph to the Engineer to accompany each Application for Payment.
- F. All negatives shall be retained by the photographer until the completion of the Project, at which time they shall be delivered to the Owner and shall become the property of the Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 3553  
SECURITY PROCEDURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Security measures including entry control, guard service, and miscellaneous restrictions.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.

**1.03 SECURITY PROGRAM**

- A. Protect Work, existing premises and Owner's operations from theft, vandalism, and unauthorized entry.
- B. Initiate program at project mobilization.
- C. Maintain program throughout construction period until Owner occupancy.

**1.04 ENTRY CONTROL**

- A. Restrict entrance of persons and vehicles into Project site and existing facilities.
- B. Allow entrance only to authorized persons with proper identification.
- C. Maintain log of workers and visitors, make available to Owner on request.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4000**  
**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Submittals.
- B. References and standards.
- C. Testing and inspection agencies and services.
- D. Control of installation.
- E. Tolerances.
- F. Manufacturers' field services.
- G. Defect Assessment.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 2100 - Allowances.
- B. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements.
- C. Section 01 4216 - Definitions.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C1077 - Standard Practice for Laboratories Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Laboratory Evaluation; 2014.
- B. ASTM C1093 - Standard Practice for Accreditation of Testing Agencies for Masonry; 2013.
- C. ASTM D3740 - Standard Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction; 2012a.
- D. ASTM E329 - Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in Construction Inspection and/or Testing; 2014a.
- E. ASTM E543 - Standard Specification for Agencies Performing Nondestructive Testing; 2013.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Design Data: Submit for Engineer's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents, or for Owner's information.
- C. Test Reports: After each test/inspection, promptly submit one copy of report to Architect, Contractor, Owner, and Engineer.
  - 1. Include:
    - a. Date issued.
    - b. Project title and number.
    - c. Name of inspector.
    - d. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
    - e. Identification of product and specifications section.
    - f. Location in the Project.
    - g. Type of test/inspection.

- h. Date of test/inspection.
  - i. Results of test/inspection.
  - j. Compliance with Contract Documents.
  - k. When requested by Engineer, provide interpretation of results.
- 2. Test report submittals are for Engineer's knowledge as contract administrator for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents, or for Owner's information.
- D. Certificates: When specified in individual specification sections, submit certification by the manufacturer and Contractor or installation/application subcontractor to Engineer, in quantities specified for Product Data.
  - 1. Indicate material or product complies with or exceeds specified requirements. Submit supporting reference data, affidavits, and certifications as appropriate.
  - 2. Certificates may be recent or previous test results on material or product, but must be acceptable to Engineer.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: When specified in individual specification sections, submit printed instructions for delivery, storage, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, and finishing, for the Owner's information. Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention, and special environmental criteria required for application or installation.
- F. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Submit reports for Engineer's benefit as contract administrator or for Owner.
  - 1. Submit report in duplicate within 30 days of observation to Engineer for information.
  - 2. Submit for information for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.
- G. Erection Drawings: Submit drawings for Engineer's benefit as contract administrator or for Owner.
  - 1. Submit for information for the limited purpose of assessing compliance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Data indicating inappropriate or unacceptable Work may be subject to action by Engineer or Owner.

#### **1.05 REFERENCES AND STANDARDS**

- A. For products and workmanship specified by reference to a document or documents not included in the Project Manual, also referred to as reference standards, comply with requirements of the standard, except when more rigid requirements are specified or are required by applicable codes.
- B. Comply with reference standard of date of issue current on date of Contract Documents, except where a specific date is established by applicable code.
- C. Obtain copies of standards where required by product specification sections.
- D. Maintain copy at project site during submittals, planning, and progress of the specific work, until Substantial Completion.
- E. Should specified reference standards conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Engineer before proceeding.

- F. Neither the contractual relationships, duties, or responsibilities of the parties in Contract nor those of Engineer shall be altered from Contract Documents by mention or inference otherwise in any reference document.

#### **1.06 Testing and Inspection Agencies and Services**

- A. Owner will employ and pay for services of an independent testing agency to perform other specified testing.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 CONTROL OF INSTALLATION**

- A. Monitor quality control over suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions, and workmanship, to produce work of specified quality.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' instructions, including each step in sequence.
- C. Should manufacturers' instructions conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Engineer before proceeding.
- D. Comply with specified standards as minimum quality for the work except where more stringent tolerances, codes, or specified requirements indicate higher standards or more precise workmanship.
- E. Have work performed by persons qualified to produce required and specified quality.
- F. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- G. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, physical distortion, and disfigurement.

#### **3.02 TOLERANCES**

- A. Monitor fabrication and installation tolerance control of products to produce acceptable Work. Do not permit tolerances to accumulate.
- B. Comply with manufacturers' tolerances. Should manufacturers' tolerances conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Engineer before proceeding.
- C. Adjust products to appropriate dimensions; position before securing products in place.

#### **3.03 TESTING AND INSPECTION**

- A. See individual specification sections for testing, inspection, and reporting required.
- B. Testing Agency Duties:
  - 1. Test samples of mixes submitted by Contractor.
  - 2. Provide qualified personnel at site. Cooperate with Engineer and Contractor in performance of services.
  - 3. Perform specified sampling and testing of products in accordance with specified standards.
  - 4. Ascertain compliance of materials and mixes with requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 5. Promptly notify Engineer and Contractor of observed irregularities or non-compliance of Work or products.
  - 6. Perform additional tests and inspections required by Engineer.
  - 7. Attend preconstruction meetings and progress meetings.

8. Submit reports of all tests/inspections specified.
- C. Limits on Testing/Inspection Agency Authority:
  1. Agency may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on requirements of Contract Documents.
  2. Agency may not approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  3. Agency may not assume any duties of Contractor.
  4. Agency has no authority to stop the Work.
- D. Contractor Responsibilities:
  1. Deliver to agency at designated location, adequate samples of materials proposed to be used that require testing, along with proposed mix designs.
  2. Cooperate with laboratory personnel, and provide access to the Work and to manufacturers' facilities.
  3. Provide incidental labor and facilities:
    - a. To provide access to Work to be tested/inspected.
    - b. To obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of Products to be tested/inspected.
    - c. To facilitate tests/inspections.
    - d. To provide storage and curing of test samples.
  4. Notify Engineer and laboratory 24 hours prior to expected time for operations requiring testing/inspection services.
  5. Employ services of an independent qualified testing laboratory and pay for additional samples, tests, and inspections required by Contractor beyond specified requirements.
- E. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be performed by the same agency on instructions by Engineer.
- F. Re-testing required because of non-compliance with specified requirements shall be paid for by Contractor.

#### **3.04 MANUFACTURERS' FIELD SERVICES**

- A. When specified in individual specification sections, require material or product suppliers or manufacturers to provide qualified staff personnel to observe site conditions, conditions of surfaces and installation, quality of workmanship, start-up of equipment, test, adjust, and balance equipment as applicable, and to initiate instructions when necessary.
- B. Submit qualifications of observer to Engineer 30 days in advance of required observations.
  1. Observer subject to approval of Engineer.
  2. Observer subject to approval of Owner.
- C. Report observations and site decisions or instructions given to applicators or installers that are supplemental or contrary to manufacturers' written instructions.

#### **3.05 DEFECT ASSESSMENT**

- A. Replace Work or portions of the Work not complying with specified requirements.
- B. If, in the opinion of Engineer, it is not practical to remove and replace the work, Engineer will direct an appropriate remedy or adjust payment.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 4216****DEFINITIONS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. References to standards, codes, Specifications, recommendations and regulations refer to the latest edition or printing prior to the date of issue of the Contract Documents.
- B. Applicable portions of standards listed that are not in conflict with Contract Documents are hereby made a part of the Specifications.
- C. Modifications or exceptions to Standards shall be considered as amendments and unmodified portions shall remain in full effect. In cases of discrepancies between standards, the more stringent requirements shall govern.

**1.02 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Furnish: To supply, deliver, unload, and inspect for damage.
- B. Install: To unpack, assemble, erect, apply, place, finish, cure, protect, clean, start up, and make ready for use.
- C. Product: Material, machinery, components, equipment, fixtures, and systems forming the work result. Not materials or equipment used for preparation, fabrication, conveying, or erection and not incorporated into the work result. Products may be new, never before used, or re-used materials or equipment.
- D. Project Manual: The book-sized volume that includes the procurement requirements (if any), the contracting requirements, and the specifications.
- E. Provide: To furnish and install.
- F. Supply: Same as Furnish.

**1.03 ABBREVIATIONS AND NAMES**

- A. The following acronyms or abbreviations as referenced in contract documents are defined to mean the associated names. Names are subject to change, and are believed to be, but are not assured to be, accurate and up-to-date as of date of contract documents:
  - 1. AA Aluminum Association
  - 2. AAMA American Architectural Manufacturers Association
  - 3. AAN American Association of Nurserymen
  - 4. AASHTO American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
  - 5. AATCC American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists
  - 6. ACI American Concrete Institute
  - 7. ACIL American Council of Independent Laboratories
  - 8. ACPA American Concrete Pipe Association
  - 9. ADC Air Diffusion Council
  - 10. AFBMA Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association, Inc.
  - 11. AGA American Gas Association
  - 12. AHAM Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
  - 13. AI Asphalt Institute
  - 14. AIA American Institute of Architects
  - 15. AIA American Insurance Association
  - 16. AISC American Institute of Steel Construction

17.	AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
18.	AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction
19.	ALSC	American Lumber Standards Committee
20.	AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association
21.	ANSI	American National Standards Institute
22.	APA	American Plywood Association
23.	APA	American Parquet Association
24.	ARI	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
25.	ASC	Adhesive and Sealant Council
26.	ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
27.	ASHREA	Architectural Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers
28.	ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
29.	ASPE	American Society of Plumbing Engineers
30.	ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineers
31.	ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
32.	AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute
33.	AWPA	American Wood-Preservers' Association
34.	AWPB	American Wood-Preservers Bureau
35.	AWS	American Welding Society
36.	AWWA	American Water Works Association
37.	BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
38.	BIA	Brick Institute of America
39.	BIFMA	Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association
40.	CBM	Certified Ballast Manufacturers
41.	CDA	Copper Development Association
42.	CE	Corps of Engineers (U.S. Dept. of the Army)
43.	CFFA	Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.
44.	CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
45.	CGA	Compressed Gas Association
46.	CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
47.	CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturer's Institute
48.	CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission
49.	CRA	California Redwood Association
50.	CRI	Carpet and Rug Institute
51.	CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute
52.	CS	Commercial Standard of NBS (U.S. Dept. of Commerce)
53.	CTI	Ceramic Tile Institute
54.	DHI	Door and Hardware Institute
55.	DLPA	Decorative Laminate Products Association
56.	DOC	Department of Commerce
57.	DOT	Department of Transportation
58.	EIA	Electronic Industries Association
59.	EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
60.	FAA	Federal Aviation Administration (U.S. Dept of Transportation)
61.	FCC	Federal Communications Commission
62.	FCI	Fluid Controls Institute



63.	FGMA	Flat Glass Marketing Association
64.	FHA	Federal Housing Administration (U.S. Dept. of HUD)
65.	FM	Factory Mutual System
66.	FS	Federal Specification (General Services Admin.)
67.	FTI	Facing Tile Institute
68.	GA	Gypsum Association
69.	GSA	General Services Administration
70.	HPMA	Hardwood Plywood Manufacturers Association
71.	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.
72.	IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
73.	IGCC	Insulating Glass Certification Council
74.	ILI	Indiana Limestone Institute of America
75.	IMIAC	International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council
76.	IRI	Industrial Risk Insurance
77.	ISA	Instrument Society of America
78.	MBMA	Metal Building Manufacturer's Association
79.	MCAA	Mechanical Contractors Association of America
80.	MIA	Marble Institute of America
81.	MIL	Military Standardization Documents (U.S. Dept. of Defense)
82.	ML/SFA	Metal Lath/Steel Framing Association
83.	MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry
84.	NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
85.	NBGQA	National Building Granite Quarries Association
86.	NBS	National Bureau of Standards (U.S. Dept. of Commerce)
87.	NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association
88.	NCRPM	National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement
89.	NEC	National Electrical Code (by NFPA)
90.	NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association
91.	NEII	National Elevator Industry, Inc.
92.	NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
93.	NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
94.	NFPA	National Forest Products Association
95.	NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association
96.	NKCA	National Kitchen Cabinet Association
97.	NOFMA	National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association
98.	NPA	National Particleboard Association
99.	NPCA	National Paint and Coatings Association
100.	NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association
101.	NRMCA	National Ready-Mix Concrete Association
102.	NSF	National Sanitation Foundation
103.	NSSEA	National School Supply and Equipment Association
104.	NTMA	National Terrazzo and Mosaic Association
105.	NWMA	National Woodwork Manufacturers Association
106.	OSHA	Occupational Safety Health Administration (U.S. Dept. of Labor)
107.	PCA	Portland Cement Association
108.	PCI	Prestressed Concrete Institute

109. PDI	Plumbing and Drainage Institute
110. PEI	Porcelain Enamel Institute
111. PS	Product Standard of NBS (U.S. Dept. of Commerce)
112. RFCI	Resilient Floor Covering Institute
113. RIS	Redwood Inspection Service (Grading Rules)
114. SAMA	Scientific Apparatus Makers Association
115. SDI	Steel Deck Institute
116. SGCC	Safety Glazing Certification Council
117. SHLMA	Southern Hardwood Lumber Manufacturers Association
118. SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturers Association
119. SJI	Steel Joist Institute
120. SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association
121. SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (Grading Rules)
122. SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau
123. SSPC	Steel Structures Painting Council
124. SWI	Steel Window Institute
125. TCA	Tile Council of America
126. TIMA	Thermal Insulation Manufacturers Association
127. TPI	Truss Plate Institute
128. TxDOT	Texas Department of Transportation
129. UBC	Uniform Building Code
130. UL	Underwriters Laboratories
131. USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
132. USPS	United States Postal Service
133. WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau (Grading Rules)
134. WRI	Wire Reinforcement Institute
135. WSC	Water Systems Council
136. WSFI	Wood and Synthetic Flooring Institute
137. WWPA	Western Wood Products Association (Grading Rules)
138. WWPA	Woven Wire Products Association

#### 1.04 GENERAL SPECIFICATION ABBREVIATIONS

A. Cubic Foot	cu. ft.
B. Degree	deg.
C. Diameter	dia.
D. Feet or Foot	ft.
E. Inch	in.
F. Inside Diameter	i.d.
G. Kips (1000 pounds)	K
H. Millimeter	mm
I. Ounce	oz.
J. Outside Diameter	o.d.
K. Pound	lb.
L. Pounds per Cubic Foot	pcf

- M. Pounds per Square Foot      psf
- N. Pounds per Square Inch      psi
- O. Square Foot                      sq. ft.
- P. Square Inch                      sq. in.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS - GENERAL**

- A. Publications of organizations and societies listed in individual Specification Sections shall be considered integral with Contract Documents to extent referenced.
- B. Publications are referred to in text by basic designation only with organizations and societies referenced by abbreviations.
- C. When standard is referenced to in individual Specification Section but is not listed in this Section by title and date, it shall be considered to be latest revision at date of Project Manual issuance.
- D. Make available at site, copies of referenced documents as Engineer or Owner may request.
- E. Following listings include full title and applicable revision date.

**1.06 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 1. 211.1-81 (Revised 1985), Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight and Mass Concrete.
  - 2. 211.2-81, Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete.
  - 3. 211.3-75 (Revised 1987), Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for No-Slump Concrete.
  - 4. 301-84 (Revised 1987), Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings.
  - 5. 304R-85, Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete.
  - 6. 306R-77 (Revised 1982), Hot Weather Concreting.
  - 7. 306R-78 (Revised 1983), Cold Weather Concreting.
  - 8. 308-81 (Revised 1986), Standard Practice for Curing Concrete.
  - 9. 309-72 (Revised 1982), Standard Practice for Consolidation of Concrete.
  - 10. 315-80, Details and Detailing of Reinforced Concrete (included in SP-66).
  - 11. 318-83 (Revised 1986), Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
  - 12. 347-78 (Reapproved 1984), Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork.
  - 13. SP-66, ACI Detailing Manual (1980 Edition).
- B. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):
  - 1. Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges (with Commentary), September 1, 1976.
  - 2. Manual of Steel Construction, Eighth Edition.
  - 3. Specification for the Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings (with Commentary), November 1, 1978.
  - 4. Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts, April 26, 1978.
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
  - 1. A 36-84a, Specification for Structural Steel.
  - 2. A 47-84, Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings.

3. A 53-84a, Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless.
4. A 82-85, Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
5. A 108-81, Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Cold-Finished, Standard Quality.
6. A 116-81, Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric.
7. A 123-84, Specification for Zinc (Hot-Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
8. A 153-84, Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
9. A 185-85, Specification for Steel Welded Wire, Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
10. A 242-87, Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Steel.
11. A 307-86, Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 6000 psi Tensile Strength.
12. A 325-86a, Specification for High-Strength Bolts for Structural Steel Joints.
13. A 370-86a, Methods and Definitions for Mechanical Testing of Steel Products.
14. A 416-86, Specification for Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-Wire Stress-Relieved for Prestressed Concrete.
15. A 421-80 (1985), Specification for Uncoated Stress-Relieved Wire for Prestressed Concrete.
16. A 446-85, Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, Structural (Physical) Quality.
17. A 475-85, Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Wire Strand.
18. A 490-85, Specification for Heat-Treated, Steel Structural Bolts 150 KSI Tensile Strength.
19. A 500-84, Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
20. A 501-84, Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.
21. A 514-87a, Specification for High-Yield Strength, Quenched and Tempered Alloy Steel Plate, Suitable for Welding.
22. A 525-83, Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, General Requirements.
23. A 572-84, Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Steel of Structural Quality.
24. A 576-81, Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality.
25. A 588-87, Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Steel with 50,000 psi Minimum Yield Point to 4 in. Thick.
26. A 611-85, Specification for Steel, Sheet, Carbon, Cold-Rolled Structural Quality.
27. A 615-87, Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
28. A 706-84a, Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
29. A 775-85, Specification for Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars.
30. A 633-85, Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel.
31. C 31-85, Method for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.
32. C 33-86, Specification for Concrete Aggregates.
33. C 39-86, Test for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
34. C 42-84a, Methods for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.
35. C 90-85, Specification for Hollow Load-Bearing Concrete Masonry Units.
36. C 91-86, Specification for Masonry Cement.

37. C 94-86, Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.
38. C 109-86, Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars.
39. C 138-81, Test Method for Unit Weight, Yield and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.
40. C 140-75 (1980), Method of Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units.
41. C 143-78, Test Method for Slump of Portland Cement Concrete.
42. C 144-87, Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
43. C 150-85a, Specification for Portland Cement.
44. C 171-69 (1986), Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
45. C 172-82, Method of Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.
46. C 173-78, Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method.
47. C 190-85, Test Method for Tensile Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars.
48. C 207-79 (1984), Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
49. C 231-82, Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.
50. C 260-85, Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.
51. C 270-86b, Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.
52. C 309-81, Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
53. C 311-85, Method for Sampling and Testing Fly Ash or Natural Pozzolans for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete.
54. C 330-87, Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete.
55. C 404-87, Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout.
56. C 476-83, Specification for Grout for Reinforced and Non-reinforced Masonry.
57. C 494-86, Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.
58. C 567-85, Test Method for Unit Weight of Structural Lightweight Concrete.
59. C 595-86, Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements.
60. C 618-85, Specification for Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement.
61. C 780-80 (1985), Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry.
62. C 827-82, Test Method for Early Volume Change of Cementitious Mixtures.
63. C 938-80 (1985), Practice for Proportioning Grout Mixtures for Preplaced-Aggregate Concrete.
64. C 942-86, Test Method for Compressive Strength of Grouts for Preplaced-Aggregate Concrete in the Laboratory.
65. C 989-85a, Specification for Ground Iron Blast-Furnace Slag for Use in Concrete and Mortars.
66. D 98-80, Specification for Calcium Chloride.
67. D 994-71 (Reaffirmed 1982), Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type).
68. D 1751-83, Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Non-extruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).
69. D 1752-84, Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction.
70. D 2092-86, Recommended Practices for Preparation of Zinc-Coated Galvanized Steel Surfaces for Painting.

71. D 2240-86, Test for Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness.
  72. D 3034, Type PSM Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings.
  73. E 164-81, Practice for Ultrasonic Contact Examination of Weldments.
  74. E 329-77 (1983), Recommended Practice for Inspection and Testing Agencies for Concrete, Steel, and Bituminous Materials as Used in Construction.
  75. E 447-84, Test Methods for Compressive Strength of Masonry Prisms.
- D. American Welding Society (AWS):
1. A5.1-81, Specification for Carbon Steel Covered Arc-Welding Electrodes.
  2. A5.5-81, Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Covered Arc-Welding Electrodes.
  3. A5.17-80, Specification for Carbon Steel Electrodes and Fluxes for Submerged Arc-Welding.
  4. A5.20-79, Specification for Carbon Steel Electrodes for Flux Cored Arc-Welding.
  5. B2.1-84, Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification.
  6. D1.1-86, Structural Welding Code - Steel.
  7. D1.3-81, Specification for Welding of Sheet Metal in Structures.
  8. D1.4-79, Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel.
  9. QC-1-86, Standard for Qualification and Certification of Welding Inspectors.
- E. Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI):
1. MNL 116-77, Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Precast Prestressed Concrete Products.
  2. MNL 117-77, Manual for Quality Control of Plants and Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products
- F. Steel Deck Institute (SDI):
1. Specification for Composite Steel Floor Deck, 1987.
  2. Specification for Non-Composite Steel Form Deck, 1987.
  3. Specification for Steel Roof Deck, 1987.
- G. Steel Joist Institute (SJI):
1. Recommended Code of Standard Practice for Steel Joists, November 4, 1985.
  2. Standard Specification for Joist Girders, November 4, 1985.
  3. Standard Specification for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series, November 4, 1985.
  4. Standard Specification for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series, November 1, 1985.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5000**  
**TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary utilities.
- B. Temporary telecommunications services.
- C. Temporary sanitary facilities.
- D. Temporary Controls: Barriers, enclosures, and fencing.
- E. Security requirements.
- F. Vehicular access and parking.
- G. Waste removal facilities and services.
- H. Project identification sign.
- I. Field offices.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 3553 - Security Procedures.
- B. Section 01 5100 - Temporary Utilities.
- C. Section 01 5213 - Field Offices and Sheds.
- D. Section 01 5500 - Vehicular Access and Parking.
- E. Section 01 5813 - Temporary Project Signage.

**1.03 TEMPORARY UTILITIES**

- A. See Section 01 5100 for additional requirements.
- B. Provide and pay for all electrical power, lighting, water, heating and cooling, and ventilation required for construction purposes.
- C. Existing facilities may be used with Owner approval.
- D. New permanent facilities may be used with Owner approval.
- E. Use trigger-operated nozzles for water hoses, to avoid waste of water.

**1.04 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SERVICES**

- A. Provide, maintain, and pay for telecommunications services to field office at time of project mobilization.
- B. Telecommunications services shall include:
  - 1. Windows-based personal computer dedicated to project telecommunications, with necessary software and laser printer.
  - 2. Telephone Land Lines: One line, minimum; one handset per line.
  - 3. Internet Connections: Minimum of one; T-1 line or faster.
  - 4. Email: Account/address reserved for project use.
  - 5. Facsimile Service: Minimum of one dedicated fax machine/printer, with dedicated phone line.
  - 6. Facsimile Service: Fax-to-email software on personal computer.
  - 7. Project web site.

**1.05 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES**

- A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Provide at time of project mobilization.
- B. Maintain daily in clean and sanitary condition.
- C. At end of construction, return facilities to same or better condition as originally found.

**1.06 BARRIERS**

- A. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas, to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public, to allow for owner's use of site and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and demolition.
- B. Provide barricades and covered walkways required by governing authorities for public rights-of-way and for public access to existing building.
- C. Provide protection for plants designated to remain. Replace damaged plants.
- D. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, site, and structures from damage.
- E. Traffic Controls: To be installed and maintained per State or local requirements..

**1.07 FENCING**

- A. Construction: Commercial grade chain link fence.
- B. Provide 6 foot high fence around construction site; equip with vehicular and pedestrian gates with locks.

**1.08 SECURITY**

- A. See Section 01 3553 for additional requirements.
- B. Provide security and facilities to protect Work, existing facilities, and Owner's operations from unauthorized entry, vandalism, or theft.
- C. Coordinate security program with Owner.

**1.09 VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING**

- A. Comply with regulations relating to use of streets and sidewalks, access to emergency facilities, and access for emergency vehicles.
- B. Coordinate access and haul routes with governing authorities and Owner.
- C. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants, free of obstructions.
- D. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.
- E. Existing on-site roads or public streets shall not be used for construction traffic.
- F. Provide temporary parking areas to accommodate construction personnel. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking.
- G. Do not allow vehicle parking on existing pavement.

**1.10 WASTE REMOVAL**

- A. See Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.
- B. Provide waste removal facilities and services as required to maintain the site in clean and orderly condition.



- C. Provide containers with lids. Remove trash from site.
- D. If materials to be recycled or re-used on the project must be stored on-site, provide suitable non-combustible containers; locate containers holding flammable material outside the structure unless otherwise approved by the authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Open free-fall chutes are not permitted. Terminate closed chutes into appropriate containers with lids.

**1.11 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Provide project identification sign of design, construction, and location approved by Owner.
- B. No other signs are allowed without Owner permission except those required by law.

**1.12 FIELD OFFICES**

- A. Office: Weathertight, with lighting, electrical outlets, heating, cooling equipment .
- B. Provide space for Project meetings, with table and chairs to accommodate 8 persons.
- C. Locate offices a minimum distance of 50 feet from existing and new structures.

**1.13 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS**

- A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Date of Substantial Completion inspection.
- B. Remove temporary underground installations to a minimum depth of 2 feet.
- C. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.
- D. Restore existing facilities used during construction to original condition.
- E. Restore new permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5100  
TEMPORARY UTILITIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary Utilities: Electricity, water, sanitary sewer, and telecommunications.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.

**1.03 TEMPORARY ELECTRICITY**

- A. Cost: By Contractor.
- B. Provide power service required from electric service purveyor.
- C. Complement existing power service capacity and characteristics as required.
- D. Provide power outlets for construction operations, with branch wiring and distribution boxes located as required. Provide flexible power cords as required.
- E. Provide main service disconnect and over-current protection at the meter .
- F. Permanent convenience receptacles may be utilized during construction.
- G. Provide adequate distribution equipment, wiring, and outlets to provide single phase branch circuits for power and lighting.
- H. Comply with Federal, State and local codes and regulations and with utility company requirements.

**1.04 TEMPORARY LIGHTING FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES**

- A. Materials and equipment may be new or used, but must be adequate in capacity for the required usage, must not create unsafe conditions, and must not violate requirements of applicable codes and standards.
- B. Provide and maintain LED, compact fluorescent, or high-intensity discharge lighting as suitable for the application for construction operations in accordance with requirements of 29 CFR 1926 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Provide branch wiring from power source to distribution boxes with lighting conductors, pigtails, and lamps as required.
- D. Each Contractor shall provide for his extension cords and any additional lighting that may be required to complete his work.
- E. Maintain lighting and provide routine repairs.
- F. Permanent building lighting may be utilized during construction.

**1.05 TEMPORARY TELEPHONE SERVICE**

- A. Arrange with local telephone service company, provide direct line telephone service at the construction site for the use of personnel and the Engineer.
- B. List telephone with information operator in the name of the Project and in the name of the Contractor.
- C. Pay all costs for installation, maintenance and removal, and service charges for local calls. Toll charges shall be paid by the party who places the call.

**1.06 TEMPORARY WATER SERVICE**

- A. Cost of Water Used: By Contractor.
- B. Provide and maintain suitable quality water service for construction operations at time of project mobilization.
- C. Extend branch piping with outlets located so water is available by hoses with threaded connections. Provide temporary pipe insulation to prevent freezing.
- D. Install branch piping with taps located so that water is available throughout the construction by the use of hoses. Protect piping and fittings against freezing.
- E. Each Contractor shall provide his distribution hoses as required to complete his work.

**1.07 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES**

- A. Provide and maintain adequate temporary outside toilet facilities for use of persons working at the Site.
- B. Keep toilets clean and in sanitary condition. Provide toilet tissue in suitable holders. Comply with applicable legal and health requirements.
- C. Remove temporary toilets when construction is completed.
- D. Existing plumbing facilities shall not be used by construction personnel.

**1.08 TEMPORARY FIRE PROTECTION**

- A. Observe and enforce throughout the work during the whole period of construction all requirements of the local City Fire Marshal and Insurance Authorities to minimize the fire hazard during the progress of the work.
- B. Make connections to existing facilities, provide water for fire protection purposes; Contractor to pay costs of water used.
- C. Install branch piping with taps located so that water is available throughout the construction by the use of hoses. Protect piping and fittings against freezing.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5213  
FIELD OFFICES AND SHEDS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Temporary field offices for use of Contractor.
- B. Maintenance and removal.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls:
- B. Section 01 5500 - Vehicular Access and Parking.

**1.03 USE OF EXISTING FACILITIES**

- A. Existing facilities shall not be used for field offices unless otherwise indicated.

**1.04 USE OF PERMANENT FACILITIES**

- A. Permanent facilities shall not be used for field offices unless otherwise indicated.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT**

- A. Materials and Equipment: Serviceable, new or used, adequate for required purpose.

**2.02 CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Portable or mobile buildings, or buildings constructed with floors raised above ground, securely fixed to foundations, with steps and landings at entrance doors.
- B. Construction: Structurally sound, secure, weather tight enclosures for office. Maintain during progress of Work; remove when no longer needed.
- C. Temperature Transmission Resistance of Floors, Walls, and Ceilings: Compatible with occupancy requirements.
- D. Exterior Materials: Weather resistant, finished in one color.
- E. Interior Materials in Offices: Sheet type materials for walls and ceilings, prefinished or painted; resilient floors and bases.
- F. Fire Extinguishers: Appropriate type fire extinguisher at each office.

**2.03 Contractor OFFICE AND FACILITIES**

- A. Size: For Contractor's needs and to provide space for project meetings.
- B. Telephone: As specified in Section 01 5000.
- C. Furnishings in Meeting Area: Conference table and chairs to seat at least eight persons; racks and files for Contract Documents, submittals, and project record documents.
- D. Other Furnishings: Contractor's option.
- E. Sanitary Facilities: As specified in Section 01 5000.
- F. Drinking Fountain: Convenient access by workers.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Fill and grade sites for temporary structures to provide drainage away from buildings.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install office spaces ready for occupancy 15 days after date fixed in Notice to Proceed.
- B. Parking: Gravel parking area near field office.
- C. Employee Residential Occupancy: Not allowed on Owner's property.

**3.03 MAINTENANCE AND CLEANING**

- A. Weekly janitorial services for offices; periodic cleaning and maintenance for offices.
- B. Maintain approach walks free of mud, water, and snow.

**3.04 REMOVAL**

- A. At completion of Work remove buildings, foundations, utility services, and debris. Restore areas.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5500  
VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Access roads.
- B. Parking.
- C. Existing pavements and parking areas.
- D. Permanent pavements and parking facilities.
- E. Construction parking controls.
- F. Flag persons.
- G. Flares and lights.
- H. Haul routes.
- I. Traffic signs and signals.
- J. Maintenance.
- K. Removal, repair.
- L. Mud from site vehicles.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5713 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Materials for Permanent Construction: As specified in product specification sections, including earthwork, paving base, and paving.

**2.02 SIGNS, SIGNALS, AND DEVICES**

- A. Post Mounted and Wall Mounted Traffic Control and Informational Signs: As required by local jurisdictions.
- B. Traffic Control Signals: As approved by local jurisdictions.
- C. Traffic Cones and Drums, Flares and Lights: As approved by local jurisdictions.
- D. Flag Person Equipment: As required by local jurisdictions.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Clear areas, provide surface and storm drainage of road, parking, area premises, and adjacent areas.
- B. Contractor shall obtain all permits and comply with all state and local codes for onsite fuel storage.

**3.02 ACCESS ROADS**

- A. Use of existing on-site streets for construction traffic is not permitted.
- B. Tracked vehicles not allowed on paved areas.

- C. Construct new temporary all-weather access roads from public thoroughfares to serve construction area, of a width and load bearing capacity to provide unimpeded traffic for construction purposes.
- D. Construct temporary bridges and culverts to span low areas and allow unimpeded drainage.
- E. Extend and relocate as work progress requires, provide detours as necessary for unimpeded traffic flow.
- F. Provide unimpeded access for emergency vehicles. Maintain 20 foot width driveways with turning space between and around combustible materials.
- G. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants and control valves free of obstructions.

### **3.03 PARKING**

- A. Use of designated areas of existing parking facilities by construction personnel is permitted.
- B. Use of new parking facilities by construction personnel is not permitted.
- C. Use of designated areas of new parking facilities by construction personnel is permitted.
- D. Arrange for temporary parking areas to accommodate use of construction personnel.
- E. When site space is not adequate, provide additional off-site parking.

### **3.04 Permanent pavements and parking facilities**

- A. Prior to Substantial Completion the base for permanent roads and parking areas may be used for construction traffic.
- B. Avoid traffic loading beyond paving design capacity. Tracked vehicles not allowed.

### **3.05 CONSTRUCTION PARKING CONTROL**

- A. Control vehicular parking to prevent interference with public traffic and parking, access by emergency vehicles, and Owner's operations.
- B. Monitor parking of construction personnel's vehicles in existing facilities. Maintain vehicular access to and through parking areas.
- C. Prevent parking on or adjacent to access roads or in non-designated areas.

### **3.06 FLAG PERSONS**

- A. Provide trained and equipped flag persons to regulate traffic when construction operations or traffic encroach on public traffic lanes.

### **3.07 FLARES AND LIGHTS**

- A. Use flares and lights during hours of low visibility to delineate traffic lanes and to guide traffic.

### **3.08 HAUL ROUTES**

- A. Consult with authority having jurisdiction, establish public thoroughfares to be used for haul routes and site access.
- B. Drawings indicate haul routes designated by authorities for use of construction traffic.
- C. Confine construction traffic to designated haul routes.
- D. Provide traffic control at critical areas of haul routes to regulate traffic, to minimize interference with public traffic.

**3.09 TRAFFIC SIGNS AND SIGNALS**

- A. At approaches to site and on site, install at crossroads, detours, parking areas, and elsewhere as needed to direct construction and affected public traffic.
- B. Install and operate automatic traffic control signals to direct and maintain orderly flow of traffic in areas under Contractor's control, and areas affected by Contractor's operations.
- C. Relocate as work progresses, to maintain effective traffic control.

**3.10 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Maintain traffic and parking areas in a sound condition free of excavated material, construction equipment, products, mud, snow, and ice.
- B. Maintain existing and new permanent paved areas used for construction; promptly repair breaks, potholes, low areas, standing water, and other deficiencies, to maintain paving and drainage in original, or specified, condition.

**3.11 REMOVAL AND REPAIR**

- A. Remove temporary roads when permanent paving is usable.
- B. Remove underground work and compacted materials to a depth of 2 feet; fill and grade site as specified.
- C. Repair existing and new permanent facilities damaged by use, to original condition.
- D. Remove equipment and devices when no longer required.
- E. Repair damage caused by installation.
- F. Remove post settings to a depth of 2 feet.

**3.12 MUD FROM SITE VEHICLES**

- A. Provide means of removing mud from vehicle wheels before entering streets.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 01 5713  
TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Prevention of erosion due to construction activities.
- B. Prevention of sedimentation of waterways, open drainage ways, and storm and sanitary sewers due to construction activities.
- C. Restoration of areas eroded due to insufficient preventive measures.
- D. Revegetation of disturbed areas.
- E. Performance bond.
- F. Compensation of Owner for fines levied by authorities having jurisdiction due to non-compliance by Contractor.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 1000 - Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- C. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- D. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- E. Section 31 3700 - Riprap.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM D4355/D4355M - Standard Test Method for Deterioration of Geotextiles by Exposure to Light, Moisture and Heat in a Xenon Arc Type Apparatus; 2014.
- B. ASTM D4491/D4491M - Standard Test Methods for Water Permeability of Geotextiles by Permittivity; 2017.
- C. ASTM D4533 - Standard Test Method for Trapezoid Tearing Strength of Geotextiles; 2011.
- D. ASTM D4632/D4632M - Standard Test Method for Grab Breaking Load and Elongation of Geotextiles; 2015a.
- E. ASTM D4751 - Standard Test Method for Determining Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile; 2012.
- F. ASTM D4873 - Standard Guide for Identification, Storage, and Handling of Geosynthetic Rolls and Samples; 2002 (Reapproved 2009).
- G. EPA (NPDES) - National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES), Construction General Permit; Current Edition.
- H. FHWA FLP-94-005 - Best Management Practices for Erosion and Sediment Control; 1995.
- I. USDA TR-55 - Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds; USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service; 2009.
- J. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality - Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) requirements.
- K. State, local, County and Municipal SWPPP requirements.

**1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with all requirements for erosion and sedimentation control, as specified for the Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES), Phases I and II, under requirements for the Construction General Permit (CGP); current edition.
- B. Comply with all more stringent requirements of the County and municipal.
- C. Comply with all requirements of the SWPPP for erosion and sedimentation control.
- D. Best Management Practices Standard: FHWA FLP-94-005.
- E. Runoff Calculation Standard for Urban Areas: USDA TR-55.
- F. Develop and follow an Erosion and Sedimentation Prevention Plan and submit periodic inspection reports.
- G. Do not begin clearing, grading, or other work involving disturbance of ground surface cover until applicable permits have been obtained; furnish all documentation required to obtain applicable permits.
  - 1. Contractor will obtain permits and pay for securities required by authority having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Owner will withhold payment to Contractor equivalent to all fines resulting from non-compliance with applicable regulations.
- H. If required by the Owner, provide a Performance Bond covering erosion and sedimentation preventive measures only, in an amount equal to 100 percent of the cost of erosion and sedimentation control work.
- I. Timing: Put preventive measures in place as soon as possible before disturbance of surface cover and before precipitation occurs.
- J. Storm Water Runoff: Control increased storm water runoff due to disturbance of surface cover due to construction activities for this project.
  - 1. Prevent runoff into storm and sanitary sewer systems, including open drainage channels, in excess of actual capacity or amount allowed by authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is less.
  - 2. Anticipate runoff volume due to the most extreme short term and 24-hour rainfall events that might occur in 10 years.
- K. Erosion On Site: Minimize wind, water, and vehicular erosion of soil on project site due to construction activities for this project.
  - 1. Control movement of sediment and soil from temporary stockpiles of soil.
  - 2. Prevent development of ruts due to equipment and vehicular traffic.
  - 3. If erosion occurs due to non-compliance with these requirements, restore eroded areas at no cost to Owner.
- L. Erosion Off Site: Prevent erosion of soil and deposition of sediment on other properties caused by water leaving the project site due to construction activities for this project.
  - 1. Prevent windblown soil from leaving the project site.
  - 2. Prevent tracking of mud and sediment onto public roads outside site.
  - 3. Prevent mud and sediment from flowing onto sidewalks and pavements.
  - 4. If erosion occurs due to non-compliance with these requirements, restore eroded areas at no cost to Owner.

- M. Sedimentation of Waterways On Site: Prevent sedimentation of waterways on the project site, including rivers, streams, lakes, ponds, open drainage ways, storm sewers, and sanitary sewers.
  - 1. If sedimentation occurs, install or correct preventive measures immediately at no cost to Owner; remove deposited sediments; comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. If sediment basins are used as temporary preventive measures, pump dry and remove deposited sediment after each storm.
- N. Sedimentation of Waterways Off Site: Prevent sedimentation of waterways off the project site, including rivers, streams, lakes, ponds, open drainage ways, storm sewers, and sanitary sewers.
  - 1. If sedimentation occurs, install or correct preventive measures immediately at no cost to Owner; remove deposited sediments; comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- O. Open Water: Prevent standing water that could become stagnant.
- P. Maintenance: Maintain temporary preventive measures until permanent measures have been established.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Mulch:
  - 1. Straw or hay.
  - 2. Wood waste, chips, or bark.
  - 3. Erosion control matting or netting.
- B. Grass Seed For Temporary Cover: Select a species appropriate to climate, planting season, and intended purpose. If same area will later be planted with permanent vegetation, do not use species known to be excessively competitive or prone to volunteer in subsequent seasons.
- C. Bales: Bound, rectangular straw bales.
- D. Bale Stakes:
  - 1. Steel U- or T-section.
  - 2. Wood.
  - 3. Minimum Length: 3 feet.
- E. Silt Fence Fabric: Polypropylene, polyethylene, or polyamide woven or nonwoven geotextile fabric resistant to common soil chemicals, mildew, and insects; non-biodegradable; in longest lengths possible; fabric including seams with the following minimum average roll lengths:
  - 1. Minimum Unit Weight: 4.5 oz/yd.
  - 2. Minimum Width: 36 inches.
  - 3. Average Opening Size: 30 U.S. Std. Sieve, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4751.
  - 4. Mullen Burst Strength: 190 lb/sq in.
  - 5. Permittivity: 0.05 sec<sup>-1</sup>, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4491/D4491M.
  - 6. Ultraviolet Resistance: Retaining at least 70 percent of tensile strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4355/D4355M after 500 hours exposure.

7. Elongation: 15 to 30 percent, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4632/D4632M.
  8. Tear Strength: 55 pounds-force, minimum, when tested in accordance with ASTM D4533.
  9. Color: Manufacturer's standard, with embedment and fastener lines preprinted.
  10. Woven Wire Backing: 2"x4" 12 gauge (min.), welded wire, galvanized.
- F. Silt Fence Posts:
1. Steel Y- or T-section, with minimum mass of 1.25 lb per linear foot.
  2. Minimum Length: 4 feet.
  3. Galvanized or painted surface.
  4. Brindle Hardness: Greater than 140.
- G. Riprap: See Section 31 3700.
- H. Filter Bags: Polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide woven fabric.
1. Unit Weight: 4 oz/sq yd.
  2. Mullen Burst Strength: Greater than 300 psi.
  3. Ultraviolet Resistance: Retaining at least 70 percent of tensile strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4355 after 500 hours exposure.
  4. Filter Bag Fill: Washed pea gravel to coarse ground (0.31" to 0.75" diameter).
- I. Rock Berms
1. Rock: Clean, open graded, 3 to 5 inch diameter; high velocity areas should use 5 to 8 inch diameter.
  2. Woven wire; 20 gauge, maximum 1" opening, galvanized, secured with shoat rings.
- J. Stabilized Construction Entrance
1. Rock: 4" to 8", washed.
  2. Fabric: Geotextile specific for soil filtration; 6 oz/sq yd; Mullen burst rating of 140 lb/sq in, greater than #50 sieve opening size.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine site and identify existing features that contribute to erosion resistance; maintain such existing features to greatest extent possible.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Schedule work so that soil surfaces are left exposed for the minimum amount of time.

### **3.03 SCOPE OF PREVENTIVE MEASURES**

- A. In all cases, if permanent erosion resistant measures have been installed temporary preventive measures are not required.
- B. Construction Entrances: Traffic-bearing aggregate surface.
1. Width: 12 feet, minimum, or full width of driveway, whichever is greater.
  2. Length: 50 feet, minimum.
  3. Provide at each construction entrance from public right-of-way.
  4. Where necessary to prevent tracking of mud onto right-of-way, provide wheel washing area out of direct traffic lane, with drain into sediment trap or basin.
- C. Linear Sediment Barriers: Made of silt fences or rock riprap.
1. Provide linear sediment barriers as detailed on drawings with the following parameters:
    - a. Along downhill perimeter edge of disturbed areas, including soil stockpiles.

- b. Along the top of the slope or top bank of drainage channels and swales that traverse disturbed areas.
  - c. Along the toe of cut slopes and fill slopes.
  - d. Perpendicular to flow across the bottom of existing and new drainage channels and swales that traverse disturbed areas or carry runoff from disturbed areas; space at maximum of 200 feet apart.
  - e. Across the entrances to culverts that receive runoff from disturbed areas.
- D. Storm Drain Curb Inlet Sediment Trap: Protect each curb inlet using one of the following measures:
  - 1. Bagged gravel inlet protection: As detailed on drawings.
- E. Storm Drain Inlet: As detailed on drawings.
- F. Temporary Splash Pads: Stone aggregate over filter fabric; size to suit application; provide at downspout outlets and storm water outlets.
- G. Soil Stockpiles: Protect using one of the following measures:
  - 1. Cover with polyethylene film, secured by placing soil on outer edges.
  - 2. Cover with mulch at least 4 inches thickness of pine needles, sawdust, bark, wood chips, or shredded leaves, or 4 inches of straw or hay.
- H. Mulching: Use only for areas that may be subjected to erosion for less than 6 months.
  - 1. Wood Waste: Use only on slopes 3:1 or flatter; no anchoring required.
- I. Temporary Seeding: Use where temporary vegetated cover is required.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION

- A. Traffic-Bearing Aggregate Surface:
  - 1. Excavate minimum of 3 inches.
  - 2. Place geotextile fabric full width and length, with minimum 12 inch overlap at joints.
  - 3. Place and compact at least 6 inches of 1 1/2 to 3 1/2 inch diameter stone.
  - 4. Reference details on the drawings.
- B. Silt Fences:
  - 1. Install with top of fabric at nominal height and embedment indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Embed bottom of fabric in a trench on the upslope side of fence, with 6 inches of fabric laid flat on bottom of trench facing upslope; backfill trench and compact.
  - 3. Do not splice fabric width; minimize splices in fabric length; splice at post only, overlapping at least 18 inches, with extra post.
  - 4. Fasten fabric to steel posts using wire, nylon cord, or integral pockets.
  - 5. Wherever runoff will flow around end of barrier or over the top, provide temporary splash pad or other outlet protection; at such outlets in the run of the barrier, make barrier not more than 12 inches high with post spacing not more than 4 feet.
  - 6. Reference details on the drawings.
- C. Straw Bale Rows:
  - 1. Install bales in continuous rows with ends butting tightly, with one bale at each end of row turned uphill.
  - 2. Install bales so that bindings are not in contact with the ground.
  - 3. Embed bales at least 4 inches in the ground.
  - 4. Anchor bales with at least two stakes per bale, driven at least 18 inches into the ground; drive first stake in each bale toward the previously placed bale to force bales together.

5. Fill gaps between ends of bales with loose straw wedged tightly.
  6. Place soil excavated for trench against bales on the upslope side of the row, compacted.
- D. Mulching Over Large Areas:
1. Dry Straw and Hay: Apply 2-1/2 tons per acre; anchor using dull disc harrow or emulsified asphalt applied using same spraying machine at 100 gallons of water per ton of mulch.
  2. Wood Waste: Apply 6 to 9 tons per acre.
  3. Erosion Control Matting: Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Mulching Over Small and Medium Areas:
1. Dry Straw and Hay: Apply 4 to 6 inches depth.
  2. Wood Waste: Apply 2 to 3 inches depth.
  3. Pine Needles: Apply 2 to 3 inches depth.
  4. Erosion Control Matting: Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Temporary Seeding:
1. When hydraulic seeder is used, seedbed preparation is not required.
  2. When surface soil has been sealed by rainfall or consists of smooth undisturbed cut slopes, and conventional or manual seeding is to be used, prepare seedbed by scarifying sufficiently to allow seed to lodge and germinate.
  3. If temporary mulching was used on planting area but not removed, apply nitrogen fertilizer at 1 pound per 1000 sq ft.
  4. On soils of very low fertility, apply 10-10-10 fertilizer at rate of 12 to 16 pounds per 1000 sq ft.
  5. Incorporate fertilizer into soil before seeding.
  6. Apply seed uniformly; if using drill or cultipacker seeders place seed 1/2 to 1 inch deep.
  7. Irrigate as required to thoroughly wet soil to depth that will ensure germination, without causing runoff or erosion.
  8. Repeat irrigation as required until grass is established.
- G. Rock Berms
1. Layout the woven wire mesh sheathing perpendicular to the direction of runoff.
  2. Rock berm will have a minimum top width of 2 feet with side slopes being 2:1 (H:V) or flatter.
  3. Place rock along the sheathing to a height not less than 18".
  4. Wrap the wire sheathing around the rock and secure with tie wire so that the ends of the sheathing overlap a minimum of 2 inches.
  5. Tie the ends of the berm into the existing upslope grade and bury the berm 3 to 4 inches into existing ground slope.
- H. Stabilized Construction Entrance
1. Remove vegetation and grade for positive drainage.
  2. Construct entrance a minimum 12 feet wide (or full width of road) by 50 feet long.
  3. If slope towards a paved street exceeds 2 percent, construct a ridge 6 to 8 inches high with 3:1 (H:V) side slopes across the foundation 15 feet from the entrance to divert runoff away from street.
  4. Place geotextile woven fabric in graded foundation.
  5. Place stone over geotextile woven fabric per the drawings.
  6. Grade to drain runoff to a sediment trap or basin.

7. Install drain pipe, as needed, to maintain street drainage in right-of-way.

### **3.05 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Inspect preventive measures daily, within 24 hours after the end of any storm that produces 0.5 inches or more rainfall at the project site, and daily during prolonged rainfall.
- B. Repair deficiencies immediately.
- C. Silt Fences:
  1. Promptly replace fabric that deteriorates.
  2. Remove silt deposits that exceed one-third of the height of the fence.
  3. Repair fences that are undercut by runoff or otherwise damaged, whether by runoff or other causes.
- D. Straw Bale Rows:
  1. Promptly replace bales that fall apart or otherwise deteriorate unless need has passed.
  2. Remove silt deposits that exceed one-half of the height of the bales.
  3. Repair bale rows that are undercut by runoff or otherwise damaged, whether by runoff or other causes.
- E. Filter Bags:
  1. Promptly replace bags that have deteriorated or have been damaged.
  2. Remove silt deposits that exceed one-third the height of the bag.
  3. Repair or replace bags that are undercut by runoff or otherwise are damaged, whether by runoff or other causes.
- F. Stabilized Construction Entrance
  1. Promptly replace rock that has deteriorated or been damaged.
  2. Remove excess dirt and sediment accumulations as needed.
- G. Rock Berms
  1. Promptly repair or replace rock berms that have been undercut by runoff or otherwise damaged.
  2. Remove silt deposits that exceed one-third the height of the rock berm.
  3. Repair any loose wire sheathing.
- H. Clean out temporary sediment control structures weekly and relocate soil on site.
- I. Place sediment in appropriate locations on site; do not remove from site.

### **3.06 CLEAN UP**

- A. Remove temporary measures after permanent measures have been installed, unless permitted to remain by Engineer.
- B. Clean out temporary sediment control structures that are to remain as permanent measures.
- C. Where removal of temporary measures would leave exposed soil, shape surface to an acceptable grade and finish to match adjacent ground surfaces.

### **END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5713.10****SPILL RESPONSE****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Guideline for Contractors for handling petroleum hydrocarbon spills and leaks on the project site.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS -- NOT USED****1.03 REFERENCES**

- A. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality Regulations, TAC Ch. 327.
- B. Edwards Aquifer Authority, Ch. 713, Subchapter E.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Summary report of procedures and operational sequence for review and approval by Engineer as Owner's Representative.
- B. Manifest and disposal records.
- C. Testing and laboratory sampling results.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Contractor to pay for any and all testing, excavation, disposal, and consultants/contractors required for the execution of the work.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 CONDITIONS**

- A. Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and Edwards Aquifer Authority (EAA) regulations require reporting of fuel spills or leaks of 25 gallons or more to the land surface, or any quantity sufficient to create a sheen on surface water. For oils, the reporting requirements are a spill of 210-gallons to the land surface or a quantity sufficient to create a sheen on surface water.
- B. Spills of quantities to the land in excess of 1-gallon, or spills that affect more than 10-square feet of ground surface, although not large enough to require reporting to TCEQ, must be reported by the Contractor to the Engineer and appropriate emergency response actions should be implemented.
- C. Cleanup of any spills related to the project shall be completed to non-detect conditions, unless the constituent is naturally occurring in which case TCEQ State specific background concentrations may be used as cleanup goals, as determined by the Engineer.

**3.02 SPILL RESPONSE ACTIONS**

- A. Appropriate response actions may vary, depending on the volume spilled or leaked and the location of the spill.
  - 1. In all cases, attempts to minimize the volume lost and the size of the area affected should be made.
  - 2. Spills/leaks on asphalt, concrete or other impervious surface, may be cleaned using absorbent materials, i.e., oil absorbent pads or socks, or granular material.
  - 3. Spills/leaks to soil or bedrock will likely require excavation.



- B. Contractor to take immediate action to contain the spill. Implement emergency response measures to stop and contain leak/spill. Appropriate emergency response measures include, but are not limited to, placement of absorbent materials on top of and downstream of leak/spill or construction of berm downstream of leak/spill to prevent further spread of material.
- C. Contact Fire Department or other appropriate Emergency Management Agency as necessary to minimize loss of property or life.
- D. Notify Engineer within 24 hours of the leak/spill.
- E. Notify TCEQ and EAA if the project is within the Edwards Aquifer Recharge Zone or 5 miles upgrade within 24 hours if quantity of material leaked/spilled meets Section 3.01, A. above.
- F. Follow protocol as shown on attached flow chart that describes some possible scenarios.

### **3.03 CLEANUP**

- A. Impacted material should be segregated from material not impacted by the leak/spill. Impacted materials may include loose material, absorbent material, or excavated material.
- B. Excavated and segregated materials should be stored on plastic and covered with plastic, or stored within a drum, roll-off box, or other covered container, pending characterization and disposal at an approved disposal facility.
- C. The volume of material segregated and disposed should be recorded, and copies of disposal manifests should be provided to the Engineer.
- D. After excavation of impacted soil, the Engineer will evaluate the area excavated and determine if sampling of remaining subgrade will be necessary.
- E. The determination will be made on a site-specific basis and will be a function of volume spilled/leaked, size of area affected, soil type, type of product spilled/leaked, location of spill/leak, etc.
- F. If sampling and analysis indicate constituents of concern are detected in the soil or rock subgrade, then additional excavation will be necessary. The Contractor shall continue to excavate at the direction of the Engineer until further sample and analysis results indicate that constituents of concern are no longer detected.
- G. After Engineers approval, the excavated area may be backfilled.
- H. The Contractor may hire their own environmental consultant/contractor to perform sampling, analysis, and cleanup oversight. In this case the Contractor's consultant must coordinate all their activities with the Engineer prior to each step, phase, or course of action.
- I. The Engineer may collect additional confirmation samples if warranted, and will provide approval that corrective actions are complete before the excavation is backfilled.
- J. Contractor must notify Engineer 48-hours in advance of sample collection and disposal. Contractor must provide Engineer or designated construction observer with opportunity to observe Contractor's implementation of approved cleanup method and to collect and split samples, is so desired by Engineer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 5813  
TEMPORARY PROJECT SIGNAGE**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Project identification sign.
- B. Project informational signs.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS -- NOT USED****1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS -- NOT USED****1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Design sign and structure to withstand 30 miles/hr wind velocity.
- B. Sign Painter: Experienced as a professional sign painter.
- C. Finishes, Painting: Adequate to withstand weathering, fading, and chipping for duration of construction.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Shop Drawing: Show content, layout, lettering, and color to the Owner for approval prior to installation .

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 SIGN MATERIALS**

- A. Structure and Framing: New, wood, structurally adequate.
- B. Sign Surfaces: Exterior grade plywood with medium density overlay, minimum 3/4 inch thick, standard large sizes to minimize joints.
- C. Rough Hardware: Galvanized, aluminum, or brass.
- D. Paint and Primers: Exterior quality, two coats; sign background of color as selected.
- E. Lettering: Exterior quality paint, colors as selected.

**2.02 PROJECT IDENTIFICATION SIGN**

- A. One painted sign of construction, design, and content indicated on drawings, location designated.
- B. Content:
  - 1. Project title and name of Owner as indicated on Contract Documents.
  - 2. Names and titles of authorities.
  - 3. Name of Prime Contractor and major Subcontractors.
- C. Graphic Design, Colors, Style of Lettering: Designated by Owner.

**2.03 PROJECT INFORMATIONAL SIGNS**

- A. Painted informational signs of same colors and lettering as Project Identification sign, or standard products; size lettering to provide legibility at 100 foot distance.
- B. Provide at each field office, storage shed, and directional signs to direct traffic into and within site. Relocate as Work progress requires.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install project identification sign within 20 days after date fixed by Notice to Proceed.
- B. Erect at designated location.
- C. Erect supports and framing on secure foundation, rigidly braced and framed to resist wind loadings.
- D. Install sign surface plumb and level, with butt joints. Anchor securely.
- E. Paint exposed surfaces of sign, supports, and framing.
- F. No other signs or advertising will be permitted on the site without specific authorization.
- G. Maintain sign in good condition for the duration of the job.

**3.02 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Maintain signs and supports clean, repair deterioration and damage.

**3.03 REMOVAL**

- A. Remove signs, framing, supports, and foundations at completion of Project and restore the area.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7000**  
**EXECUTION AND CLOSEOUT REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.
- B. Requirements for alterations work, including selective demolition.
- C. Pre-installation meetings.
- D. Cutting and patching.
- E. Surveying for laying out the work.
- F. Cleaning and protection.
- G. Starting of systems and equipment.
- H. Demonstration and instruction of Owner personnel.
- I. Closeout procedures, including Contractor's Correction Punch List, except payment procedures.
- J. General requirements for maintenance service.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.
- B. Section 01 5100 - Temporary Utilities.
- C. Section 01 5713 - Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control.
- D. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations; 2013.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Survey work: Submit name, address, and telephone number of Surveyor before starting survey work.
  - 1. On request, submit documentation verifying accuracy of survey work.
  - 2. Submit a copy of site drawing signed by the Land Surveyor, that the elevations and locations of the work are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  - 3. Submit surveys and survey logs for the project record.
- B. Demolition Plan: Submit demolition plan as specified by OSHA and local authorities.
  - 1. Indicate extent of demolition, removal sequence, bracing and shoring, and location and construction of barricades and fences. Include design drawings and calculations for bracing and shoring.
  - 2. Identify demolition firm and submit qualifications.
  - 3. Include a summary of safety procedures.
- C. Cutting and Patching: Submit written request in advance of cutting or alteration that affects:
  - 1. Structural integrity of any element of Project.
  - 2. Integrity of weather exposed or moisture resistant element.
  - 3. Efficiency, maintenance, or safety of any operational element.

4. Visual qualities of sight exposed elements.
5. Work of Owner or separate Contractor.
6. Include in request:
  - a. Identification of Project.
  - b. Location and description of affected work.
  - c. Necessity for cutting or alteration.
  - d. Description of proposed work and products to be used.
  - e. Alternatives to cutting and patching.
  - f. Effect on work of Owner or separate Contractor.
  - g. Written permission of affected separate Contractor.
  - h. Date and time work will be executed.
- D. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of capped and active utilities.

#### **1.05 QUALIFICATIONS**

- A. For demolition work, employ a firm specializing in the type of work required.
- B. For survey work, employ a land surveyor registered in the State in which the Project is located and acceptable to the Owner. Submit evidence of Surveyor's Errors and Omissions insurance coverage in the form of an Insurance Certificate.
- C. For field engineering, employ a professional engineer of the discipline required for specific service on Project, licensed in the State in which the Project is located. Employ only individual(s) trained and experienced in establishing and maintaining horizontal and vertical control points necessary for laying out construction work on project of similar size, scope and/or complexity.
- D. For design of temporary shoring and bracing, employ a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.

#### **1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

- A. Use of explosives is not permitted.
- B. Grade site to drain. Maintain excavations free of water. Provide, operate, and maintain pumping equipment.
- C. Protect site from puddling or running water. Provide water barriers as required to protect site from soil erosion.
- D. Ventilate enclosed areas to assist cure of materials, to dissipate humidity, and to prevent accumulation of dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
- E. Dust Control: Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations. Provide positive means to prevent air-borne dust from dispersing into atmosphere and over adjacent property.
  1. Provide dust-proof enclosures to prevent entry of dust generated outdoors.
  2. Provide dust-proof barriers between construction areas and areas continuing to be occupied by Owner.
- F. Erosion and Sediment Control: Plan and execute work by methods to control surface drainage from cuts and fills, from borrow and waste disposal areas. Prevent erosion and sedimentation.
  1. Minimize amount of bare soil exposed at one time.
  2. Provide temporary measures such as berms, dikes, and drains, to prevent water flow.

3. Construct fill and waste areas by selective placement to avoid erosive surface silts or clays.
4. Periodically inspect earthwork to detect evidence of erosion and sedimentation; promptly apply corrective measures.
- G. Noise Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to minimize noise produced by construction operations.
  1. Outdoors: Limit conduct of especially noisy exterior work to the hours of 8 am to 5 pm.
  2. Indoors: Limit conduct of especially noisy interior work to the hours of 6 pm to 7 am.
- H. Pest and Rodent Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent pests and insects from damaging the work.
  1. Pest Control Service: Weekly treatments.
- I. Rodent Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent rodents from accessing or invading premises.
- J. Pollution Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to prevent contamination of soil, water, and atmosphere from discharge of noxious, toxic substances, and pollutants produced by construction operations. Comply with federal, state, and local regulations.

#### **1.07 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of the various sections of the Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements, with provisions for accommodating items installed later.
- B. Notify affected utility companies and comply with their requirements.
- C. Verify that utility requirements and characteristics of new operating equipment are compatible with building utilities. Coordinate work of various sections having interdependent responsibilities for installing, connecting to, and placing in service, such equipment.
- D. Coordinate space requirements, supports, and installation of mechanical and electrical work that are indicated diagrammatically on drawings. Follow routing indicated for pipes, ducts, and conduit, as closely as practicable; place runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- E. In finished areas except as otherwise indicated, conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring within the construction. Coordinate locations of fixtures and outlets with finish elements.
- F. Coordinate completion and clean-up of work of separate sections.
- G. After Owner occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective work and work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Owner's activities.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PATCHING MATERIALS**

- A. New Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing products and work for patching and extending work.
- B. Type and Quality of Existing Products: Determine by inspecting and testing products where necessary, referring to existing work as a standard.
- C. Product Substitution: For any proposed change in materials, submit request for substitution described in Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Verify that existing substrate is capable of structural support or attachment of new work being applied or attached.
- C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.
- D. Take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.
- E. Verify that utility services are available, of the correct characteristics, and in the correct locations.
- F. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.
- B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.
- C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

**3.03 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS**

- A. When required in individual specification sections, convene a preinstallation meeting at the site prior to commencing work of the section.
- B. Require attendance of parties directly affecting, or affected by, work of the specific section.
- C. Notify Engineer and Owner four days in advance of meeting date.
- D. Prepare agenda and preside at meeting:
  - 1. Review conditions of examination, preparation and installation procedures.
  - 2. Review coordination with related work.
- E. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Engineer, Owner, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

**3.04 LAYING OUT THE WORK**

- A. Verify locations of survey control points prior to starting work.
- B. Promptly notify Engineer of any discrepancies discovered.
- C. Contractor shall locate and protect survey control and reference points.
- D. Control datum for survey is that indicated on drawings.
- E. Protect survey control points prior to starting site work; preserve permanent reference points during construction.
- F. Promptly report to Engineer the loss or destruction of any reference point or relocation required because of changes in grades or other reasons.

- G. Replace dislocated survey control points based on original survey control. Make no changes without prior written notice to Engineer.
- H. Utilize recognized engineering survey practices.
- I. Establish a minimum of two permanent bench marks on site, referenced to established control points. Record locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on project record documents.
- J. Establish elevations, lines and levels. Locate and lay out by instrumentation and similar appropriate means:
  - 1. Site improvements including pavements; stakes for grading, fill and topsoil placement; utility locations, slopes, and invert elevations.
  - 2. Grid or axis for structures.
  - 3. Building foundation, column locations, ground floor elevations.
- K. Periodically verify layouts by same means.
- L. Maintain a complete and accurate log of control and survey work as it progresses.
- M. On completion of foundation walls and major site improvements, prepare a certified survey illustrating dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and site work.

### **3.05 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. In addition to compliance with regulatory requirements, conduct construction operations in compliance with NFPA 241, including applicable recommendations in Appendix A.
- B. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.
- C. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.

### **3.06 ALTERATIONS**

- A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
  - 1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as indicated.
  - 2. Report discrepancies to Engineer before disturbing existing installation.
  - 3. Beginning of alterations work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions.
- B. Keep areas in which alterations are being conducted separated from other areas that are still occupied.
  - 1. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary dustproof partitions of construction in locations indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Provide sound retardant partitions of construction indicated on drawings in locations indicated on drawings.
- C. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
  - 1. Remove rotted wood, corroded metals, and deteriorated masonry and concrete; replace with new construction specified.



2. Remove items indicated on drawings.
  3. Relocate items indicated on drawings.
  4. Where new surface finishes are to be applied to existing work, perform removals, patch, and prepare existing surfaces as required to receive new finish; remove existing finish if necessary for successful application of new finish.
  5. Where new surface finishes are not specified or indicated, patch holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces as closely as possible.
- D. Services: Remove, relocate, and extend existing systems to accommodate new construction.
1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components; if necessary, modify installation to allow access or provide access panel.
  2. Where existing systems or equipment are not active and Contract Documents require reactivation, put back into operational condition; repair supply, distribution, and equipment as required.
  3. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
    - a. Disable existing systems only to make switchovers and connections; minimize duration of outages.
    - b. Coordinate with Owner for limitations on outages and required notifications.
    - c. Provide temporary connections as required to maintain existing systems in service.
  4. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities.
  5. Remove abandoned pipe, ducts, conduits, and equipment, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification; patch holes left by removal using materials specified for new construction.
- E. Protect existing work to remain.
1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
  2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
  3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
- F. Adapt existing work to fit new work: Make as neat and smooth transition as possible.
1. When existing finished surfaces are cut so that a smooth transition with new work is not possible, terminate existing surface along a straight line at a natural line of division and make recommendation to Engineer.
- G. Patching: Where the existing surface is not indicated to be refinished, patch to match the surface finish that existed prior to cutting. Where the surface is indicated to be refinished, patch so that the substrate is ready for the new finish.
- H. Remove demolition debris and abandoned items from alterations areas and dispose of off-site; do not burn or bury.
- I. Do not begin new construction in alterations areas before demolition is complete.
- J. Comply with all other applicable requirements of this section.

### **3.07 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Whenever possible, execute the work by methods that avoid cutting or patching.
- B. See Alterations article above for additional requirements.

- C. Perform whatever cutting and patching is necessary to:
  - 1. Complete the work.
  - 2. Fit products together to integrate with other work.
  - 3. Provide openings for penetration of mechanical, electrical, and other services.
  - 4. Match work that has been cut to adjacent work.
  - 5. Repair areas adjacent to cuts to required condition.
  - 6. Repair new work damaged by subsequent work.
  - 7. Remove samples of installed work for testing when requested.
  - 8. Remove and replace defective and non-complying work.
- D. Execute work by methods that avoid damage to other work and that will provide appropriate surfaces to receive patching and finishing. In existing work, minimize damage and restore to original condition.
- E. Employ skilled and experienced installer to perform cutting for weather exposed and moisture resistant elements, and sight exposed surfaces.
- F. Cut rigid materials using masonry saw or core drill. Pneumatic tools not allowed without prior approval.
- G. Restore work with new products in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
- H. Fit work air tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.
- I. Patching:
  - 1. Finish patched surfaces to match finish that existed prior to patching. On continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection or natural break. For an assembly, refinish entire unit.
  - 2. Match color, texture, and appearance.
  - 3. Repair patched surfaces that are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections due to patching work. If defects are due to condition of substrate, repair substrate prior to repairing finish.

### **3.08 PROGRESS CLEANING**

- A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition.
- B. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site periodically and dispose off-site; do not burn or bury.

### **3.09 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK**

- A. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.
- B. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.
- C. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.
- D. Prohibit traffic from landscaped areas.
- E. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle coverings if possible.

### **3.10 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. Execute final cleaning prior to final project assessment.
- B. Use cleaning materials that are nonhazardous.

- C. Remove all labels that are not permanent. Do not paint or otherwise cover fire test labels or nameplates on mechanical and electrical equipment.
- D. Clean debris from drainage systems.
- E. Clean site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.
- F. Remove waste, surplus materials, trash/rubbish, and construction facilities from the site; dispose of in legal manner; do not burn or bury.

**3.11 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES**

- A. Make submittals that are required by governing or other authorities.
  - 1. Provide copies to Engineer and Owner.
- B. Accompany Project Coordinator on preliminary inspection to determine items to be listed for completion or correction in the Contractor's Correction Punch List for Contractor's Notice of Substantial Completion.
- C. Notify Engineer when work is considered ready for Engineer's Substantial Completion inspection.
- D. Submit written certification containing Contractor's Correction Punch List, that Contract Documents have been reviewed, work has been inspected, and that work is complete in accordance with Contract Documents and ready for Engineer's Substantial Completion inspection.
- E. Conduct Substantial Completion inspection and create Final Correction Punch List containing Engineer's and Contractor's comprehensive list of items identified to be completed or corrected and submit to Engineer.
- F. Correct items of work listed in executed Certificates of Substantial Completion and comply with requirements.
- G. Accompany Project Coordinator on Contractor's preliminary final inspection.
- H. Notify Engineer when work is considered finally complete and ready for Engineer's Substantial Completion final inspection.
- I. Complete items of work determined by Engineer listed in executed Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7123.10****FIELD ENGINEERING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.01 DESCRIPTION**

- A. The Contractor shall, at his expense, perform the following:
  - 1. Engage a licensed Surveyor, approved by the Owner, and acceptable to the Engineer, to locate all surveyor marks, including bench marks in order that the exact lines of the property, building and grades may be determined.
  - 2. Lay out entire Project prior to start of construction.
  - 3. Locate and protect control points prior to starting site work, and preserve all permanent reference points during construction. Replace project control points which may be lost or destroyed.
  - 4. Establish a minimum of two permanent bench marks on the site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Record locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 5. Establish all construction lines and levels by instrumentation and similar appropriate means.
- B. Any discrepancies arising in locating the work in respect to property and building line shall be reported immediately to the Owner and the Engineer.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7800  
CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Project record documents.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.
- C. Warranties and bonds.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Individual Product Sections: Specific requirements for operation and maintenance data.
- B. Individual Product Sections: Warranties required for specific products or Work.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Project Record Documents: Submit documents to Engineer with claim for final Application for Payment.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. Submit two copies of preliminary draft or proposed formats and outlines of contents before start of Work. Engineer will review draft and return one copy with comments.
  - 2. For equipment, or component parts of equipment put into service during construction and operated by Owner, submit completed documents within ten days after acceptance.
  - 3. Submit one copy of completed documents 15 days prior to final inspection. This copy will be reviewed and returned after final inspection, with Engineer comments. Revise content of all document sets as required prior to final submission.
  - 4. Submit two sets of revised final documents in final form within 10 days after final inspection.
- C. Warranties and Bonds:
  - 1. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during construction with Owner's permission, submit documents within 10 days after acceptance.
  - 2. Make other submittals within 10 days after Date of Substantial Completion, prior to final Application for Payment.
  - 3. For items of Work for which acceptance is delayed beyond Date of Substantial Completion, submit within 10 days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the beginning of the warranty period.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
  - 1. Drawings.
  - 2. Specifications.
  - 3. Addenda.
  - 4. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
  - 5. Reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
  - 6. Manufacturer's instruction for assembly, installation, and adjusting.

- B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by Owner.
- C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.
- D. Record information concurrent with construction progress.
- E. Specifications: Legibly mark and record at each product section description of actual products installed, including the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's name and product model and number.
  - 2. Product substitutions or alternates utilized.
  - 3. Changes made by Addenda and modifications.
- F. Record Drawings and Shop Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
  - 1. Measured depths of foundations in relation to finish first floor datum.
  - 2. Measured horizontal and vertical locations of underground utilities and appurtenances, referenced to permanent surface improvements.
  - 3. Measured locations of internal utilities and appurtenances concealed in construction, referenced to visible and accessible features of the Work.
  - 4. Field changes of dimension and detail.
  - 5. Details not on original Contract drawings.

### **3.02 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Source Data: For each product or system, list names, addresses and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers, including local source of supplies and replacement parts.
- B. Product Data: Mark each sheet to clearly identify specific products and component parts, and data applicable to installation. Delete inapplicable information.
- C. Drawings: Supplement product data to illustrate relations of component parts of equipment and systems, to show control and flow diagrams. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
- D. Typed Text: As required to supplement product data. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure, incorporating manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.03 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES**

- A. For Each Product, Applied Material, and Finish:
  - 1. Product data, with catalog number, size, composition, and color and texture designations.
  - 2. Information for re-ordering custom manufactured products.
- B. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental cleaning agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Moisture protection and weather-exposed products: Include product data listing applicable reference standards, chemical composition, and details of installation. Provide recommendations for inspections, maintenance, and repair.
- D. Additional information as specified in individual product specification sections.
- E. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.

- F. Provide a listing in Table of Contents for design data, with tabbed fly sheet and space for insertion of data.

### **3.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS**

- A. For Each Item of Equipment and Each System:
  - 1. Description of unit or system, and component parts.
  - 2. Identify function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
  - 3. Include performance curves, with engineering data and tests.
  - 4. Complete nomenclature and model number of replaceable parts.
- B. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.
- C. Panelboard Circuit Directories: Provide electrical service characteristics, controls, and communications.
- D. Include color coded wiring diagrams as installed.
- E. Operating Procedures: Include start-up, break-in, and routine normal operating instructions and sequences. Include regulation, control, stopping, shut-down, and emergency instructions. Include summer, winter, and any special operating instructions.
- F. Maintenance Requirements: Include routine procedures and guide for preventative maintenance and trouble shooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly instructions; and alignment, adjusting, balancing, and checking instructions.
- G. Provide servicing and lubrication schedule, and list of lubricants required.
- H. Include manufacturer's printed operation and maintenance instructions.
- I. Include sequence of operation by controls manufacturer.
- J. Provide original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings, and diagrams required for maintenance.
- K. Provide control diagrams by controls manufacturer as installed.
- L. Provide Contractor's coordination drawings, with color coded piping diagrams as installed.
- M. Provide charts of valve tag numbers, with location and function of each valve, keyed to flow and control diagrams.
- N. Provide list of original manufacturer's spare parts, current prices, and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
- O. Include test and balancing reports.
- P. Additional Requirements: As specified in individual product specification sections.

### **3.05 ASSEMBLY OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. Assemble operation and maintenance data into durable manuals for Owner's personnel use, with data arranged in the same sequence as, and identified by, the specification sections.
- B. Where systems involve more than one specification section, provide separate tabbed divider for each system.
- C. Prepare instructions and data by personnel experienced in maintenance and operation of described products.
- D. Prepare data in the form of an instructional manual.

- E. Binders: Commercial quality, 8-1/2 by 11 inch three D side ring binders with durable plastic covers; 2 inch maximum ring size. When multiple binders are used, correlate data into related consistent groupings.
- F. Cover: Identify each binder with typed or printed title OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS; identify title of Project; identify subject matter of contents.
- G. Project Directory: Title and address of Project; names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Engineer, Consultants, Contractor and subcontractors, with names of responsible parties.
- H. Tables of Contents: List every item separated by a divider, using the same identification as on the divider tab; where multiple volumes are required, include all volumes Tables of Contents in each volume, with the current volume clearly identified.
- I. Dividers: Provide tabbed dividers for each separate product and system; identify the contents on the divider tab; immediately following the divider tab include a description of product and major component parts of equipment.
- J. Text: Manufacturer's printed data, or typewritten data on 24 pound paper.
- K. Drawings: Provide with reinforced punched binder tab. Bind in with text; fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
- L. Arrange content by systems or process flow under section numbers and sequence of Table of Contents of this Project Manual.
- M. Contents: Prepare a Table of Contents for each volume, with each product or system description identified, in three parts as follows:
  - 1. Part 1: Directory, listing names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Engineer, Contractor, Subcontractors, and major equipment suppliers.
  - 2. Part 2: Operation and maintenance instructions, arranged by system or process flow and subdivided by specification section. For each category, identify names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Subcontractors and suppliers. Identify the following:
    - a. Significant design criteria.
    - b. List of equipment.
    - c. Parts list for each component.
    - d. Operating instructions.
    - e. Maintenance instructions for equipment and systems.
    - f. Maintenance instructions for special finishes, including recommended cleaning methods and materials, and special precautions identifying detrimental agents.
  - 3. Part 3: Project documents and certificates, including the following:
    - a. Shop drawings and product data.
    - b. Air and water balance reports.
    - c. Certificates.
    - d. Photocopies of warranties and bonds.
- N. Provide a listing in Table of Contents for design data, with tabbed dividers and space for insertion of data.
- O. Table of Contents: Provide title of Project; names, addresses, and telephone numbers of Engineer, Consultants, and Contractor with name of responsible parties; schedule of products and systems, indexed to content of the volume.



**3.06 WARRANTIES AND BONDS**

- A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within 10 days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put into use with Owner's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until Date of Substantial completion is determined.
- B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.
- C. Co-execute submittals when required.
- D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.
- E. Include photocopies of each in operation and maintenance manuals, indexed separately on Table of Contents.
- F. Manual: Bind in commercial quality 8-1/2 by 11 inch three D side ring binders with durable plastic covers.
- G. Cover: Identify each binder with typed or printed title WARRANTIES AND BONDS, with title of Project; name, address and telephone number of Contractor and equipment supplier; and name of responsible company principal.
- H. Table of Contents: Neatly typed, in the sequence of the Table of Contents of the Project Manual, with each item identified with the number and title of the specification section in which specified, and the name of product or work item.
- I. Separate each warranty or bond with index tab sheets keyed to the Table of Contents listing. Provide full information, using separate typed sheets as necessary. List Subcontractor, supplier, and manufacturer, with name, address, and telephone number of responsible principal.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 01 7836.10  
WARRANTIES AND BONDS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Assemble warranties, bonds and services and maintenance contracts, executed by each of the respective manufacturers, suppliers, and subcontractors.
- B. Review submittals to verify compliance with Contract Documents. Submit to Engineer for review and transmittal to Owner.

**1.02 TIME OF SUBMITTALS**

- A. For equipment or component parts of equipment put into service during progress of construction submit within 10 days after acceptance.
- B. Otherwise make submittals within ten days after Date of Substantial Completion, prior to final request for payment.
- C. For items of work, where acceptance is delayed materially beyond the Date of Substantial Completion, provide updated submittal within ten days after acceptance, listing the date of acceptance as the start of the warranty period.

**END OF SECTION**

**MAINTENANCE BOND**

STATE OF TEXAS

Contract Date \_\_\_\_\_

COUNTY OF HARRIS

Date Bond Executed \_\_\_\_\_

PRINCIPAL \_\_\_\_\_

SURETY \_\_\_\_\_

OWNER Continental Homes of Texas, L.P.

PENAL SUM OF BOND (in words and figures) \_\_\_\_\_

(\$ \_\_\_\_\_), being 100 percent of the Contract Price.

CONTRACT for Construction of Water, Sanitary Sewer, Street, Drainage Improvements and related appurtenances for Redbird Ranch Phase 2 Unit 2M-2, Medina County, Texas (the "Contract").

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that we, Principal and Surety above named, are held and firmly bound unto Owner, its successors and assigns, in the penal sum of the amount stated above, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves and our respective heirs, executors, administrators, officers, directors, shareholders, partners, successors, and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, Principal entered into that certain Contract with Owner, which Contract is expressly incorporated herein for all purposes.

NOW, THEREFORE, THE CONDITIONS OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that if Principal well and truly repair any and all defects in the work occasioned by or resulting from defects in materials furnished by, or workmanship of, the Principal in performing the work covered by the Contract, including any guaranty or warranty required under the Contract, then this obligation is void; otherwise it is to remain in full force and effect. Should the Principal fail to well and truly repair any and all defects in the work occasioned by or resulting from defects in materials furnished by, or workmanship of, the Principal in performing the work as required by the Contract in all its terms, the Surety will be liable for all damages, losses, expenses and liabilities that the Owner may suffer in consequence thereof.

The parties intend this maintenance bond to be a common law bond to be constructed in accordance with Texas law.

Surety hereby agrees, for value received, that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to work performed under the Contract, or to the plans, specifications or drawings accompanying the Contract, will in any way affect its obligations on this Bond and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the Contract or to the work to be performed thereunder.

The bound parties have executed this instrument pursuant to authority of their respective governing body, to be effective on the same date of the Contract.

PRINCIPAL

ATTEST

By \_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

Address \_\_\_\_\_

(SEAL)

SURETY

ATTEST

By \_\_\_\_\_

By \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

(SEAL)

Physical Address:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Mailing Address:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_

Local Recording Agent Personal Identification Number:

\_\_\_\_\_

Agency Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Agency Address \_\_\_\_\_

Agency Telephone \_\_\_\_\_

**Surety must attach its original Power of Attorney to this Bond.**

**CERTIFICATE AS TO CORPORATE PRINCIPAL**

I, \_\_\_\_\_, certify that I am the secretary of the corporation named as Principal in the Bond; that \_\_\_\_\_, who signed the bond on behalf of Principal, was then \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation; that I know his or her signature, and his or her signature is genuine; and that the Bond was duly signed for and on behalf of the corporation by authority of its governing body.

\_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Seal)

Signature of Corporate Secretary

**ATTACH POWER OF ATTORNEY**

**SECTION 02 3000  
SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. A Geotechnical Report (available for review in the office of the Engineer) was obtained for use in preparing the design.
- B. The Geotechnical Report is not a conclusive indication of the soil conditions other than where the borings were taken.
- C. The accuracy of the Geotechnical Report is not guaranteed in any respect by the Owner, and the Owner accepts no responsibility for interpretation of conclusions drawn therefrom.
- D. The information contained in the Geotechnical Report is made available in order that the Contractor may have ready access to the same information available to the Owner as of this date.
- E. Contractor is invited and encouraged to make his own interpretation and evaluation of the information and by starting work shall be assumed to have fully accepted responsibility for the subsurface conditions that may hereafter be encountered in performing the excavation work.
- F. Contractor is to examine the project site and the record of investigation and make, to whatever extent they deem appropriate, his own investigation of existing subsurface conditions to determine the nature, kind and character of materials to be encountered.
- G. Extra payment will not be authorized for work which should have been anticipated or could have been anticipated upon careful examination of the site, or upon soil investigation, or upon consideration of factors generally recognized as being inherent in excavation work of the nature indicated by the Contract Documents.
- H. The Contractor shall advise Engineer of discovery of any unknown or undetermined items.
- I. The Contractor shall make their own investigation into the location and size of existing site utilities whether represented on the drawings or not.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 0100**  
**MAINTENANCE OF CONCRETE**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 Section Includes**

- A. Cleaning of existing concrete surfaces.
- B. Repair of exposed structural, shrinkage, and settlement cracks.
- C. Resurfacing of concrete surfaces having spalled areas and other damage.
- D. Repair of deteriorated concrete.
- E. Repair of internal concrete reinforcement.
- F. Restoration and patching of concrete surfaces.

**1.02 Related Requirements**

- A. Section 03 1000 - Concrete Forming and Accessories.
- B. Section 03 2000 - Concrete Reinforcing.
- C. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

**1.03 Price and Payment Procedures**

- A. Repair Surface: By the square foot. Includes surface preparation, repair, finishing.
- B. Preparation for Resurfacing: By the square foot. Includes surface preparation, cleaning.

**1.04 Reference Standards**

- A. ASTM A82/A82M - Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement; 2007.
- B. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2015.
- C. ASTM A767/A767M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2009.
- D. ASTM A775/A775M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars; 2007b (Reapproved 2014).
- E. ASTM A996/A996M - Standard Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2014.
- F. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete; 2015.
- G. ASTM C33/C33M - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates; 2016.
- H. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2016.
- I. ASTM C348 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Hydraulic-Cement Mortars; 2014.
- J. ASTM C404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout; 2011.
- K. ASTM C882 - Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Epoxy-Resin Systems Used with Concrete by Slant Shear; 2012.
- L. ASTM C928/C928M - Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Rapid-Hardening Cementitious Material for Concrete Repairs; 2013.

- M. ASTM C1059/C1059M - Standard Specification for Latex Agents for Bonding Fresh to Hardened Concrete; 2013.
- N. ASTM D3039/D3039M - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Polymer Matrix Composite Materials; 2017.
- O. ASTM D638 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics; 2010.
- P. ASTM D695 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Properties of Rigid Plastics; 2010.
- Q. AWS D1.4/D1.4M - Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel; 2011.
- R. ICC-ES AC178 - Acceptance Criteria for Inspection and Verification of Concrete and Reinforced and Unreinforced Masonry Strengthening Using Fiber-Reinforced Polymer (FRP) or Steel-Reinforced Polymer (SRP) Composite Systems; 2017, with Editorial Revision 2020.

**1.05 Administrative Requirements**

- A. Scheduling: Perform work during a time period allowed by authority having jurisdiction of road right-of-way.

**1.06 Submittals**

- A. Product Data: Indicate product standards, physical and chemical characteristics, technical specifications, limitations, maintenance instructions, and general recommendations regarding each material.
- B. Field quality control submittals.
- C. Field quality control submittals for CFRP.
- D. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that specified products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- E. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of structural reinforcement repairs and type of repair.

**1.07 Quality Assurance**

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design reinforcement splices under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section.
- C. Cleaner Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified.
- E. Perform welding work in accordance with AWS D1.4.

**1.08 Delivery, Storage, and Handling**

- A. Comply with manufacturers' instructions for storage, shelf life limitations, and handling of products.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 Cleaning Materials**

- A. Detergent: Non-ionic detergent.
- B. Blasting Medium: Sand.



**2.02 Cementitious Patching and Repair Materials**

- A. Cementitious Resurfacing Mortar: One- or two-component, factory-mixed, polymer-modified cementitious mortar designed for continuous thin-coat application.
  - 1. In-place material resistant to freeze/thaw conditions.
  - 2. Mixed with water or latex type bonding agent in proportions as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Integral corrosion inhibitor.
  - 4. Recommended Thickness: Feather edge to 1/8 inch.
  - 5. Color: Gray.
- B. Cementitious Repair Mortar, Trowel Grade: One- or two-component, factory-mixed, polymer-modified cementitious mortar.
  - 1. In-place material resistant to freeze/thaw conditions.
  - 2. Mixed with water or latex type bonding agent in proportions as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Dry Material: Complies with ASTM C928/C928M.
  - 4. Integral corrosion inhibitor.
- C. Cementitious Repair Mortar, Form and Pour/Pump Grade: Flowable, one- or two-component, factory-mixed, polymer-modified cementitious mortar; in-place material resistant to freeze/thaw conditions.
  - 1. Mixed with water in proportions as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Cementitious Pavement Repair Mortar: Fast hardening, flowable; composed of cement, sand, and additives; capable of setting in cold weather conditions without the aid of chloride- or gypsum-based accelerators; in-place material resistant to freeze/thaw conditions.
  - 1. Dry Material: Complies with ASTM C928/C928M.
  - 2. Integral corrosion inhibitor.
  - 3. Time To Open To Traffic: 1 hour, maximum.
  - 4. Time to Top-Coating: 4 hours, maximum.
- E. Cementitious Hydraulic Waterstop: Very fast setting, low slump, hand formable, and capable of stopping active water leaks; in-place material resistant to freeze/thaw conditions.
- F. Mix cementitious mortar and grout in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for purpose intended.
- G. Include bonding agent as additive to mix.

**2.03 Epoxy Patching and Repair Materials**

- A. Epoxy Repair Mortar: Epoxy resin mixed with aggregate and other materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for purpose intended; comply with pot life and workability limits.
- B. Mix epoxy mortars in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for purpose intended.
- C. Mix components in clean equipment or containers. Conform to pot life and workability limits.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: Non-sag, two-component, 100 percent solids; recommended by manufacturer for purpose and conditions under which used.
  - 1. Bond Strength (ASTM C882): 1,500 psi, minimum.
  - 2. Tensile Strength (ASTM D638): 6,600 psi, minimum.
  - 3. Percent Elongation (ASTM D638): 3.3 percent at 7 days at 70 degrees F, maximum.

4. Compressive Strength (ASTM D695): 10,000 psi, minimum.

#### **2.04 Accessories**

- A. Anchoring Adhesive: Self-leveling or non-sag as applicable.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III; gray or white.
- C. Sand: ASTM C33/C33M or ASTM C404; uniformly graded, clean.
- D. Water: Clean and potable.
- E. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M Grade 40 (40,000 psi) billet-steel deformed bars, unfinished.
- F. Reinforcing Steel: Deformed bars, ASTM A996/A996M Grade 40 (280), Type A.
  1. Galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I or II.
- G. Stirrup Steel: ASTM A1064/A1064M.
- H. Splicing Sleeves: Per shop drawings.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 Examination**

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. Beginning of installation means acceptance of substrate.

#### **3.02 Cleaning Existing Concrete**

- A. Provide enclosures, barricades, and other temporary construction as required to protect adjacent work from damage.
- B. Clean concrete surfaces of dirt or other contamination using the gentlest method that is effective.
  1. Try the gentlest method first, then, if not clean enough, use a less gentle method taking care to watch for impending damage.
  2. Clean out cracks and voids using same methods.
- C. The following are acceptable cleaning methods, in order from gentlest to less gentle:
  1. Water washing using low-pressure, maximum of 100 psi, and, if necessary, brushes with natural or synthetic bristles.
  2. Increasing the water washing pressure to maximum of 400 psi.
  3. Adding detergent to washing water; with final water rinse to remove residual detergent.
  4. Steam-generated low-pressure hot-water washing.
  5. Abrasive blasting: Use sand.

#### **3.03 Concrete Structural Member Repair**

- A. See drawings for specific areas to be repaired.
- B. Remove broken and soft concrete at least 1/4 inch deep.
- C. Mechanically cut away damaged portions of reinforcement.
- D. Remove corrosion from steel and clean mechanically.
- E. Blast clean remaining exposed reinforcement surfaces.
- F. Repair by welding new bar reinforcement to existing reinforcement using sleeve splices.
  1. Perform welding work in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.

2. Make welded sleeve splices to achieve strength to exceed strength of new reinforcement.
- G. Cover exposed steel reinforcement with epoxy mortar.
- H. Work epoxy mortar into broken surface and build up patch to match original.
- I. Feather edges of repairs flush to sound surface and trowel surface to match surrounding area.

### **3.04 Crack Repair Using Epoxy Adhesive Injection**

- A. Repair exposed cracks.
- B. Provide temporary entry ports spaced to accomplish movement of fluids between ports; no deeper than the depth of the crack to be filled or port size diameter no greater than the thickness of the crack. Provide temporary seal at concrete surface to prevent leakage of adhesive.
- C. Inject adhesive into ports under pressure using equipment appropriate for particular application.
- D. Begin injection at lower entry port and continue until adhesive appears in adjacent entry port. Continue from port to port until entire crack is filled.
- E. Remove temporary seal and excess adhesive.
- F. Clean surfaces adjacent to repair and blend finish.

### **3.05 Concrete Surface Repair Using Cementitious Materials**

- A. Clean concrete surfaces, cracks, and joints of dirt, laitance, corrosion, and other contamination using method(s) specified above and allow to dry.
- B. Apply coating of bonding agent to entire concrete surface to be repaired.
- C. Fill voids with cementitious mortar flush with surface.
- D. Apply repair mortar by steel trowel to a minimum thickness of 1/4 inch over entire surface, terminating at a vertical change in plane on all sides.
- E. Trowel finish to match adjacent concrete surfaces.
- F. Damp cure for four days.

### **3.06 Field Quality Control**

- A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. An independent testing agency will perform field inspection and testing.
  1. Test concrete for calcium chloride content during the execution of the Work.
  2. Field Quality Control for CFRP:
    - a. Inspect installation and test for compliance with ICC-ES AC178.
    - b. Inspect for voids, bubbles, and delaminations by performing a visual and acoustic tap test of layered surface after 24 hours of initial resin saturant cure.
    - c. Test for material properties of CFRP in accordance with ASTM D3039/D3039M.
    - d. Nonconforming Work: Repair defective work after minimum cure time for CFRP laminates.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 1000**  
**CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 Section Includes**

- A. Formwork for cast-in-place concrete, with shoring, bracing and anchorage.
- B. Openings for other work.
- C. Form accessories.
- D. Form stripping.

**1.02 Related Requirements**

- A. Section 03 2000 - Concrete Reinforcing.
- B. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

**1.03 Price and Payment Procedures**

- A. See Section 01 2200 - Unit Prices, for additional unit price requirements.
- B. Measurement and payment of forming work will be by the unit price method.
- C. Formwork (Vertical Structures): Measure by the square foot. Includes form materials, placement, placing accessories, stripping.
- D. Formwork (Horizontal Structures): Measure by the square foot. Includes form materials, placement, placing accessories, stripping.

**1.04 Reference Standards**

- A. ACI CODE-318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2019 (Reapproved 2022).
- B. ACI PRC-347 - Guide to Formwork for Concrete; 2014 (Reapproved 2021).
- C. ACI SPEC-117 - Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials; 2010 (Reapproved 2015).
- D. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- E. ACI 117 - Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials; 2010.
- F. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete; 2010 (Errata 2012).
- G. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2011.
- H. ACI 347R - Guide to Formwork for Concrete; 2014.
- I. ASME A17.1 - Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators; 2013.
- J. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2009.

**1.05 Submittals**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on void form materials and installation requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate pertinent dimensions, materials, bracing, and arrangement of joints and ties.
- C. Permanent Insulated Foam Panel Formwork Shop Drawings: Include calculations or selections from manufacturer's prescriptive design tables that indicate compliance with applicable building code and manufacturer's requirements.

1. Include test reports for performance criteria specified.
  2. Include the design engineer's stamp or seal on each sheet of shop drawings.
- D. Design Data: As required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Construction Joints: Submit diagram of proposed construction joints not shown on the Drawings prior to or concurrent with reinforcing bar shop drawings.

**1.06 Quality Assurance**

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with Texas Department of Transportation standards.
- B. Maintain one copy of each installation standard on site throughout the duration of concrete work.

**1.07 Delivery, Storage, and Handling**

- A. Deliver prefabricated forms and installation instructions in manufacturer's packaging.
- B. Store prefabricated forms off ground in ventilated and protected manner to prevent deterioration from moisture.
- C. Protect plastic foam products from damage and exposure to sunlight.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 Formwork - General**

- A. Provide concrete forms, accessories, shoring, and bracing as required to accomplish cast-in-place concrete work.
- B. Design and construct concrete that complies with design with respect to shape, lines, and dimensions.
- C. Chamfer outside corners of beams, joists, columns, and walls.
- D. Comply with applicable state and local codes with respect to design, fabrication, erection, and removal of formwork.
- E. Comply with relevant portions of ACI CODE-318, ACI PRC-347, and ACI SPEC-301.
- F. Comply with Texas Department of Transportation standards.
- G. Use the following form types:
1. Walls Not Exposed To View: Site fabricated plywood of sufficient thickness capable of sustaining the loads.
  2. Walls Exposed To View: Commercial grade, moisture resistant, smooth-faced plywood of sufficient thickness capable of sustaining the loads.
  3. Elevated Floor/Roof Slabs: Permanent prefabricated foam panel formwork; formwork to remain.
- H. Form Ties:
1. Form ties for exposed concrete surfaces shall be manufactured to allow a positive break back of no less than one inch (1") inside the concrete surface.
  2. Ties shall be equipped with a plastic cone of not less than five-eighths inch (5/8") diameter and one inch (1") long which will completely cover the hole and prevent the leakage of any mortar.
  3. Form ties for unexposed surfaces shall be bolt rods or patented devices having a minimum tensile strength of three thousand (3,000) pounds when fully assembled.

4. Ties shall be adjustable in length and free of lugs, cones, washers or other features which would leave a hole larger than seven-eighths inch (7/8") in diameter, or depressions back of the exposed surface of the concrete.
5. Ties shall be of such construction that, when the forms are removed, there will be no metal remaining within one inch (1") of the finished surface of the concrete.

**2.02 Wood Form Materials**

- A. Softwood Plywood: PS 1, B-B High Density Concrete Form Overlay, Class I.
- B. Plywood: Douglas Fir, Spruce, or Yellow Pine species; solid one side grade; sound undamaged sheets with clean, true edges.
- C. Lumber: Yellow Pine species; #2 grade; with grade stamp clearly visible.

**2.03 Removable Prefabricated Forms**

- A. Preformed Steel Forms: Minimum 16 gauge, 0.0598 inch thick, matched, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished surfaces.
- B. Preformed Plastic Forms: Thermoplastic polystyrene, thermoplastic, thermosetting, filled polyurethane elastomer; or polyurethane elastomer form liner, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished surfaces.
- C. Glass Fiber Fabric Reinforced Plastic Forms: Matched, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished concrete surfaces.
- D. Pan Type: Steel or glass fiber, of size and profile indicated.
- E. Tubular Column Type: Round, Spirally wound laminated fiber, wood, or glass fiber material, surface treated with release agent, non-reusable, of sizes indicated.
- F. Void Forms: Moisture resistant treated paper faces, biodegradable, structurally sufficient to support weight of wet concrete mix until initial set.

**2.04 Permanent Prefabricated Foam Panel Formwork**

- A. Floor/Roof Deck Forms: Pre-engineered expanded polystyrene foam plastic deck and beam/joist forms with factory installed metal channel furring strips flush with face of panel and field installed form stiffener slots.
  1. Structural Performance: In accordance with applicable code.
  2. Form Cross Section: As indicated on drawings; flat-bottomed solid foam blocks with voids only for stiffeners and beam/joist cross-section; interlocking long edges.

**2.05 Formwork Accessories**

- A. Form Ties: Removable or snap-off type, galvanized metal or plastic, fixed length, cone type, 1 inch back break dimension, free of defects that could leave holes larger than 1 inch in concrete surface.
- B. Form Release Agent: Colorless mineral oil that will not stain concrete, absorb moisture, impair natural bonding of concrete finish coatings, or affect color characteristics of concrete finish coatings.
- C. Filler Strips for Chamfered Corners: Rigid plastic or wood strip type.

- D. Dovetail Anchor Slot: Galvanized steel, at least 22 gauge, 0.0299 inch thick, foam filled, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
- E. Flashing Reglets: Galvanized steel, at least 22 gauge, 0.0299 inch thick, longest possible lengths, with alignment splines for joints, foam filled, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
- F. Nails, Spikes, Lag Bolts, Through Bolts, Anchorages: Sized as required, of sufficient strength and character to maintain formwork in place while placing concrete.
- G. Waterstops: Rubber or polyvinyl chloride, minimum 1,750 psi tensile strength, minimum 50 degrees F to plus 175 degrees F working temperature range.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 Examination**

- A. Verify lines, levels and centers before proceeding with formwork. Ensure that dimensions agree with drawings.

#### **3.02 Earth Forms**

- A. Hand trim sides and bottom of earth forms. Remove loose soil prior to placing concrete.

#### **3.03 Erection - Formwork**

- A. Erect formwork, shoring and bracing to achieve design requirements, in accordance with requirements of ACI SPEC-301.
- B. Provide bracing to ensure stability of formwork. Shore or strengthen formwork subject to overstressing by construction loads.
- C. Install permanent insulated foam panel formwork per manufacturer's recommendations.
- D. Arrange and assemble formwork to permit dismantling and stripping. Do not damage concrete during stripping. Permit removal of remaining principal shores.
- E. Align joints and make watertight. Keep form joints to a minimum.
- F. Obtain approval before framing openings in structural members that are not indicated on drawings.
- G. Install void forms in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Protect forms from moisture or crushing.
- H. Coordinate this section with other sections of work that require attachment of components to formwork.
- I. If formwork is placed after reinforcement, resulting in insufficient concrete cover over reinforcement, request instructions from Engineer before proceeding.

#### **3.04 Application - Form Release Agent**

- A. Apply form release agent on formwork in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Apply prior to placement of reinforcing steel, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
- C. Do not apply form release agent where concrete surfaces will receive special finishes or applied coverings that are affected by agent. Soak inside surfaces of untreated forms with clean water. Keep surfaces coated prior to placement of concrete.

**3.05 Inserts, Embedded Parts, and Openings**

- A. Provide formed openings where required for items to be embedded in passing through concrete work.
- B. Locate and set in place items that will be cast directly into concrete.
- C. Coordinate with work of other sections in forming and placing openings, slots, reglets, recesses, sleeves, bolts, anchors, other inserts, and components of other work.
- D. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, so they are straight, level, and plumb. Ensure items are not disturbed during concrete placement.
- E. Install waterstops in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, so they are continuous without displacing reinforcement. Heat seal joints so they are watertight.
- F. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection. Locate openings at bottom of forms to allow flushing water to drain.
- G. Close temporary openings with tight fitting panels, flush with inside face of forms, and neatly fitted so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.

**3.06 Form Cleaning**

- A. Clean forms as erection proceeds, to remove foreign matter within forms.
- B. Clean formed cavities of debris prior to placing concrete.
  - 1. Flush with water or use compressed air to remove remaining foreign matter. Ensure that water and debris drain to exterior through clean-out ports.
  - 2. During cold weather, remove ice and snow from within forms. Do not use de-icing salts. Do not use water to clean out forms, unless formwork and concrete construction proceed within heated enclosure. Use compressed air or other means to remove foreign matter.

**3.07 Formwork Tolerances**

- A. Construct formwork to maintain tolerances required by ACI SPEC-117, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construct permanent insulated foam panel formwork to maintain tolerances required by ACI SPEC-301.
- C. Construct and align formwork for elevator hoistway in accordance with ASME A17.1.
- D. Camber slabs and beams in accordance with ACI SPEC-301.

**3.08 Field Quality Control**

- A. Inspect erected formwork, shoring, and bracing to ensure that work is in accordance with formwork design, and to verify that supports, fastenings, wedges, ties, and items are secure.

**3.09 Form Removal**

- A. Do not remove forms or bracing until concrete has gained sufficient strength to carry its own weight and imposed loads.
- B. Loosen forms carefully. Do not wedge pry bars, hammers, or tools against finish concrete surfaces scheduled for exposure to view.
- C. Store removed forms to prevent damage to form materials or to fresh concrete. Discard damaged forms.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 03 2000**  
**CONCRETE REINFORCING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 Section Includes**

- A. Reinforcing steel for cast-in-place concrete.
- B. Supports and accessories for steel reinforcement.

**1.02 Related Requirements**

- A. Section 03 1000 - Concrete Forming and Accessories.
- B. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

**1.03 Price and Payment Procedures**

- A. Bar Reinforcement: By the ton. Includes reinforcement, placement, and accessories.
- B. Welded Wire Reinforcement: By the square foot. Includes welded wire reinforcement, placement, and accessories.

**1.04 Reference Standards**

- A. ACI MNL-66 - ACI Detailing Manual; 2020.
- B. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete; 2010 (Errata 2012).
- C. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2011.
- D. ACI SP-66 - ACI Detailing Manual; 2004.
- E. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- F. ASTM A82/A82M - Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement; 2007.
- G. ASTM A184/A184M - Standard Specification for Welded Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement; 2006 (Reapproved 2011).
- H. ASTM A185/A185M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain, for Concrete; 2007.
- I. ASTM A497/A497M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Deformed, for Concrete; 2007.
- J. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2015.
- K. ASTM A641/A641M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire; 2009a (Reapproved 2014).
- L. ASTM A704/A704M - Standard Specification for Welded Steel Plain Bar or Rod Mats for Concrete Reinforcement; 2006 (Reapproved 2011).
- M. ASTM A706/A706M - Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2014.
- N. ASTM A767/A767M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2009.
- O. ASTM A775/A775M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars; 2007b (Reapproved 2014).

- P. ASTM A884/A884M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement; 2014.
- Q. ASTM A996/A996M - Standard Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2014.
- R. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete; 2015.
- S. ASTM D3963/D3963M - Standard Specification for Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars; 2001 (Reapproved 2007).
- T. AWS D1.4/D1.4M - Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel; 2011.
- U. CRSI (DA4) - Manual of Standard Practice; 2009.
- V. CRSI (P1) - Placing Reinforcing Bars; 2011.

#### **1.05 Submittals**

- A. Shop Drawings: Comply with requirements of ACI MNL-66. Include bar schedules, shapes of bent bars, spacing of bars, and location of splices.
  - 1. Prepare shop drawings under seal of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of work of this type and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that reinforcing steel and accessories supplied for this project meet or exceed specified requirements.
- C. Reports: Submit certified copies of mill test report of reinforcement materials analysis.

#### **1.06 Quality Assurance**

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with ACI SPEC-301.
  - 1. Maintain one copy of each document on project site.
- B. Provide Engineer with access to fabrication plant to facilitate inspection of reinforcement. Provide notification of commencement and duration of shop fabrication in sufficient time to allow inspection.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 Reinforcement**

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 615/A 615M Grade 40 (280), Unfinished.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed low-alloy steel bars, Unfinished.
- C. Reinforcing Steel: Deformed bars, ASTM A996/A996M Grade 40 (280), Type A.
  - 1. Galvanized in accordance with ASTM A767/A767M, Class I.
- D. Reinforcing Steel Mat: ASTM A704/A704M, using ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 40 (40,000 psi) steel bars or rods, unfinished.
- E. Stirrup Steel: ASTM A1064/A1064M steel wire, unfinished.
- F. Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement (WWR): Galvanized, deformed type; ASTM A1064/A1064M.
  - 1. Form: Flat Sheets.
  - 2. WWR Style: 4 x 8-W6 x W10.
  - 3. Wire Gage: W4xW4 unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
- G. Reinforcement Accessories:
  - 1. Tie Wire: Annealed, minimum 16 gauge, 0.0508 inch.

2. Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, Spacers: Sized and shaped for adequate support of reinforcement during concrete placement.
3. Provide stainless steel, galvanized, plastic, or plastic coated steel components for placement within 1-1/2 inches of weathering surfaces.

## **2.02 Fabrication**

- A. Fabricate concrete reinforcing in accordance with CRSI (DA4) - Manual of Standard Practice.
- B. Welding of reinforcement is permitted only with the specific approval of Engineer. Perform welding in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.
  1. Galvanized and Epoxy Coated Reinforcement: Clean surfaces, weld and re-protect welded joint in accordance with CRSI (DA4).
- C. Fabricate and handle epoxy-coated reinforcing in accordance with ASTM D3963/D3963M.
- D. Locate reinforcing splices not indicated on drawings at point of minimum stress.
  1. Review locations of splices with Engineer.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 Placement**

- A. Place, support and secure reinforcement against displacement. Do not deviate from required position.
- B. Do not displace or damage vapor barrier.
- C. Accommodate placement of formed openings.
- D. Maintain concrete cover around reinforcing as follows:
  1. Beams: 2 inch or per Engineer's drawings.
  2. Supported Slabs and Joists: 2 inch or per Engineer's drawings.
  3. Column Ties: 2 inch or per Engineer's drawings.
  4. Walls (exposed to weather or backfill): 2 inch or per Engineer's drawings.
  5. Footings and Concrete Formed Against Earth: 2 inch or per Engineer's drawings.
  6. Slabs on Fill: 2 inch or per Engineer's drawings.
- E. Reinforcement shall be accurately placed and securely saddle tied at every other intersection with No. 18 gauge black annealed wire, and shall be rigidly held in place during the placing of the concrete by means of metal chairs or spacers.
- F. Bars in concrete walls shall be held in position, and to proper clearance, by means of concrete or metal spacer made especially for the locations where spacers are required.
- G. Bars in beams and slabs shall be held to exact location during placing of concrete by spacers, chairs, or other necessary supports.
- H. Comply with applicable code for concrete cover over reinforcement.
- I. Bond and ground all reinforcement.

### **3.02 Field Quality Control**

- A. An independent testing agency will inspect installed reinforcement for conformance to contract documents before concrete placement.

### **3.03 Schedules**

- A. Reinforcement For Superstructure Framing Members: Deformed bars, unfinished.

- B. Reinforcement For Foundation Wall Framing Members and Slab-on-Grade: Deformed bars and welded wire reinforcement, galvanized finish.
- C. Reinforcement For Parking Structure Framing Members: Deformed bars, epoxy coated finish.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 3000**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 Section Includes**

- A. Concrete formwork.
- B. Concrete shear walls, elevator shaft walls, and foundation walls.
- C. Joint devices associated with concrete work.
- D. Miscellaneous concrete elements.
- E. Concrete curing.

**1.02 Related Requirements**

- A. Section 03 1000 - Concrete Forming and Accessories.
- B. Section 03 2000 - Concrete Reinforcing.
- C. Section 32 1250 - Site Pavement.

**1.03 Price and Payment Procedures**

- A. Cement: By the cubic yard.

**1.04 Reference Standards**

- A. ACI 117 - Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials; 2010.
- B. ACI 211.1 - Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete; 1991 (Reapproved 2009).
- C. ACI 211.2 - Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete; 1998 (Reapproved 2004).
- D. ACI CODE-318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2019 (Reapproved 2022).
- E. ACI PRC-211.1 - Selecting Proportions for Normal-Density and High Density-Concrete - Guide; 2022.
- F. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete; 2010 (Errata 2012).
- G. ACI 302.1R - Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction; 2004 (Errata 2007).
- H. ACI 304R - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete; 2000.
- I. ACI 305R - Hot Weather Concreting; 2010.
- J. ACI 306R - Cold Weather Concreting; 2010.
- K. ACI 308R - Guide to Curing Concrete; 2001 (Reapproved 2008).
- L. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2011.
- M. ACI 347R - Guide to Formwork for Concrete; 2014.
- N. ACI PRC-304 - Heavyweight Concrete: Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing; 2020.
- O. ACI PRC-305 - Guide to Hot Weather Concreting; 2020.
- P. ACI PRC-306 - Guide to Cold Weather Concreting; 2016.
- Q. ACI PRC-308 - Guide to External Curing of Concrete; 2016.

- R. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- S. ASTM A185/A185M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain, for Concrete; 2007.
- T. ASTM A497/A497M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Deformed, for Concrete; 2007.
- U. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2015.
- V. ASTM A767/A767M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2009.
- W. ASTM A775/A775M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars; 2007b (Reapproved 2014).
- X. ASTM A884/A884M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement; 2014.
- Y. ASTM C33/C33M - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates; 2016.
- Z. ASTM C39/C39M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens; 2015a.
- AA. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; 2015.
- AB. ASTM C109/C109M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement Mortars (Using 2-in. or (50-mm) Cube Specimens); 2013.
- AC. ASTM C143/C143M - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete; 2012.
- AD. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2016.
- AE. ASTM C171 - Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete; 2007.
- AF. ASTM C173/C173M - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method; 2014.
- AG. ASTM C260/C260M - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete; 2010a.
- AH. ASTM C309 - Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete; 2011.
- AI. ASTM C330/C330M - Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete; 2014.
- AJ. ASTM C494/C494M - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete; 2013.
- AK. ASTM C618 - Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete; 2015.
- AL. ASTM C685/C685M - Standard Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing; 2014.
- AM. ASTM C881/C881M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete; 2014.
- AN. ASTM C979/C979M - Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete; 2010.
- AO. ASTM C1059/C1059M - Standard Specification for Latex Agents for Bonding Fresh to Hardened Concrete; 2013.

- AP. ASTM C1107/C1107M - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink); 2014.
- AQ. ASTM C1240 - Standard Specification for Silica Fume Used in Cementitious Mixtures; 2014.
- AR. ASTM C1602/C1602M - Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete; 2012.
- AS. ASTM D994/D994M - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type); 2011.
- AT. ASTM D1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types); 2004 (Reapproved 2013).
- AU. ASTM D2103 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Film and Sheeting; 2015.
- AV. ASTM D3963/D3963M - Standard Specification for Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars; 2001 (Reapproved 2007).
- AW. ASTM E154/E154M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover; 2008a (Reapproved 2013).
- AX. ASTM E1155 - Standard Test Method for Determining F(F) Floor Flatness and F(L) Floor Levelness Numbers; 1996 (Reapproved 2008).
- AY. ASTM E1643 - Standard Practice for Selection, Design, Installation and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs; 2011.
- AZ. ASTM E 1155M - Standard Test Method for Determining F(F) Floor Flatness and F(L) Floor Levelness Numbers [Metric]; 1996 (Reapproved 2008).
- BA. ASTM E1745 - Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs; 2011.
- BB. ASTM E1993/E1993M - Standard Specification for Bituminous Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs; 1998 (Reapproved 2013).
- BC. COE CRD-C 48 - Method of Test for Water Permeability of Concrete; 1992.
- BD. COE CRD-C 513 - COE Specifications for Rubber Waterstops; 1974.
- BE. COE CRD-C 572 - Corps of Engineers Specifications for Polyvinylchloride Waterstop; 1974.
- BF. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; 2014 (Errata 2015).

#### **1.05 Submittals**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturers' data on manufactured products showing compliance with specified requirements and installation instructions.
  - 1. For curing compounds, provide data on method of removal in the event of incompatibility with floor covering adhesives.
- B. Construction Joints: Submit drawing of proposed construction joints for slab on grade, etc. where they are not indicated on the drawings.
- C. Laboratory Test Reports and Mix Design: Submit laboratory test reports for concrete materials and mix designs as specified in the Testing Laboratory section of the Specifications.
- D. Test Reports: Submit report for each test or series of tests specified.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: For concrete accessories, indicate installation procedures and interface required with adjacent construction.

- F. Sustainable Design Submittal: If any fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, rice hull ash, or other waste material is used in mix designs to replace Portland cement, submit the total volume of concrete cast in place, mix design(s) used showing the quantity of portland cement replaced, reports showing successful cylinder testing, and temperature on day of pour if cold weather mix is used.

#### **1.06 Quality Assurance**

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with ACI SPEC-301 and ACI CODE-318.
  - 1. Maintain one copy of each document on site.
- B. Follow recommendations of ACI PRC-305 when concreting during hot weather.
- C. Follow recommendations of ACI PRC-306 when concreting during cold weather.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 Formwork**

- A. Form Materials: Contractor's choice of standard products with sufficient strength to withstand hydrostatic head without distortion in excess of permitted tolerances.
  - 1. Form Facing for Exposed Finish Concrete: Contractor's choice of materials that will provide smooth, stain-free final appearance.
  - 2. Earth Cuts: Do not use earth cuts as forms for vertical surfaces. Natural rock formations that maintain a stable vertical edge may be used as side forms.
  - 3. Form Coating: Release agent that will not adversely affect concrete or interfere with application of coatings.
  - 4. Form Ties: Cone snap type that will leave no metal within 1-1/2 inches of concrete surface.

#### **2.02 Reinforcement Materials**

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 03 2000.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (60,000 psi).
  - 1. Type: Deformed billet-steel bars.
  - 2. Finish: Unfinished, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M, plain type.
  - 1. Form: Flat sheets or coiled rolls.
  - 2. Mesh Size: 6"x6", unless otherwise noted on drawings.
  - 3. Wire Gage: W 4 x W 4, unless otherwise noted on drawings.
- D. Reinforcement Accessories:
  - 1. Tie Wire: Annealed, minimum 16 gauge, 0.0508 inch.
  - 2. Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, Spacers: Sized and shaped for adequate support of reinforcement during concrete placement.
  - 3. Provide stainless steel, galvanized, plastic, or plastic coated steel components for placement within 1-1/2 inches of weathering surfaces.

#### **2.03 Concrete Materials**

- A. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I - Normal portland type. Use one brand of cement throughout project.
  - 1. Acquire cement for entire project from same source.
- B. Fine and Coarse Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M.



1. Acquire all aggregates for entire project from same source for exposed concrete only.
- C. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C330/C330M.
- D. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
- E. Calcined Pozzolan: ASTM C618, Class N.
- F. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240, proportioned in accordance with ACI PRC-211.1.
- G. Waterproofing Additive: Crystalline waterproofing intended for mixing into concrete to close concrete pores by growth of crystals, with no decrease in concrete strength or chemical resistance.
  1. Permeability of Cured Concrete: No measurable leakage when tested in accordance with COE CRD-C 48 at 350 feet of head; provide test reports.
  2. Potable Water Contact Approval: NSF certification for use on structures holding potable water, based on testing in accordance with NSF 61.
- H. Water: ASTM C1602/C1602M; clean, potable, and not detrimental to concrete.
- I. Fiber Reinforcement: Synthetic fiber shown to have long-term resistance to deterioration when exposed to moisture and alkalis; 1/2 inch length.

#### **2.04 Admixtures**

- A. Prohibited Admixtures: Calcium chloride, thiocyanates or admixtures containing more than 0.05% chloride ions are not permitted.
- B. Do not use chemicals that will result in soluble chloride ions in excess of 0.1 percent by weight of cement.
- C. Air Entrainment Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- D. High Range Water Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type G.
- E. High Range Water Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type F.
- F. Water Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type E.
- G. Water Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type D.
- H. Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type C.
- I. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type B.
- J. Water Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type A.

#### **2.05 Accessory Materials**

- A. Non-Shrink Cementitious Grout: Premixed compound consisting of non-metallic aggregate, cement, water reducing and plasticizing agents.
  1. Grout: Comply with ASTM C1107/C1107M.
  2. Minimum Compressive Strength at 48 Hours, ASTM C109/C109M: 2,000 pounds per square inch.
  3. Minimum Compressive Strength at 28 Days, ASTM C109/C109M: 7,000 pounds per square inch.
- B. Non-Shrink Epoxy Grout: Moisture-insensitive, two-part; consisting of epoxy resin, non-metallic aggregate, and activator.

#### **2.06 Bonding and Jointing Products**

- A. Latex Bonding Agent: Non-redispersable acrylic latex, complying with ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II.

- B. Epoxy Bonding System:
- C. Waterproofing Admixture Slurry: Slurry coat of Portland cement, sand, and crystalline waterproofing additive, mixed with water in proportions recommended by manufacturer to achieve waterproofing at cold joints in concrete.
- D. Waterstops: Rubber, complying with COE CRD-C 513.
  - 1. Configuration: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Size: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Waterstops: PVC, complying with COE CRD-C 572.
  - 1. Configuration: As indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Size: As indicated on drawings.
- F. Reglets: Formed steel sheet, galvanized, with temporary filler to prevent concrete intrusion during placement.
  - 1. Size: As indicated on drawings.
- G. Slab Contraction Joint Device: Preformed linear strip intended for pressing into wet concrete to provide straight route for shrinkage cracking.
- H. Slab Construction Joint Devices: Combination keyed joint form and screed, galvanized steel, with rectangular or round knockout holes for conduit or rebar to pass through joint form at 6 inches on center; ribbed steel stakes for setting.
  - 1. Provide removable plastic cap strip that forms wedge-shaped joint for sealant installation.
  - 2. Height: To suit slab thickness.

## 2.07 Curing Materials

- A. Evaporation Reducer: Liquid thin-film-forming compound that reduces rapid moisture loss caused by high temperature, low humidity, and high winds; intended for application immediately after concrete placement.
- B. Curing Compound, Naturally Dissipating: Clear, water-based, liquid membrane-forming compound; complying with ASTM C309.
- C. Curing and Anti-Spalling Compound: Boiled linseed oil compound.
  - 1. Application: Use on roadway, bridge deck, parking deck, and ramps.
- D. Curing and Sealing Compound, Low Gloss: Liquid, membrane-forming, clear, non-yellowing acrylic; complying with ASTM C1315 Type 1 Class A.
  - 1. Vehicle: Water-based.
  - 2. Solids by Mass: 25 percent, minimum.
  - 3. VOC Content: OTC compliant.
- E. Curing and Sealing Compound, High Gloss: Liquid, membrane-forming, clear, non-yellowing acrylic; complying with ASTM C1315 Type 1 Class A.
  - 1. Vehicle: Solvent-based.
  - 2. Solids by Mass: 25 percent, minimum.
  - 3. VOC Content: Ozone Transport Commission (OTC) compliant.
- F. Moisture-Retaining Sheet: ASTM C171.
  - 1. Curing paper, regular.
  - 2. Polyethylene film, white opaque, minimum nominal thickness of 4 mil, 0.004 inch.
  - 3. White-burlap-polyethylene sheet, weighing not less than 3.8 ounces per square yard.

- G. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D2103, 4 mil, 0.004 inch thick, clear.
- H. Water: Potable, not detrimental to concrete.

## **2.08 Concrete Mix Design**

- A. Proportioning Normal Weight Concrete: Comply with ACI PRC-211.1 recommendations.
  - 1. Replace as much Portland cement as possible with fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, or rice hull ash as is consistent with ACI recommendations.
- B. Proportioning Structural Lightweight Concrete: Comply with ACI 211.2 recommendations.
  - 1. Replace as much Portland cement as possible with fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, or rice hull ash as is consistent with ACI recommendations.
- C. Concrete Strength: Establish required average strength for each type of concrete on the basis of field experience or trial mixtures, as specified in ACI SPEC-301.
  - 1. For trial mixtures method, employ independent testing agency acceptable to Engineer for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs.
- D. Admixtures: Add acceptable admixtures as recommended in ACI PRC-211.1 and at rates recommended or required by manufacturer.
- E. Normal Weight Concrete:
  - 1. Compressive Strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM C39/C39M at 28 days: 3,000 pounds per square inch or as indicated on drawings.
  - 2. Calcined Pozzolan Content: Maximum 10 percent of cementitious materials by weight.
  - 3. Silica Fume Content: Maximum 5 percent of cementitious materials by weight.
  - 4. Cement Content: Minimum 5 sacks per cubic yard.
  - 5. Water-Cement Ratio: Maximum 59 percent by weight.
  - 6. Total Air Content: 4 percent, determined in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M.
  - 7. Maximum Slump: 4 inches.
  - 8. Maximum Aggregate Size: 5/8 inch.

## **2.09 Mixing**

- A. On Project Site: Mix in drum type batch mixer, complying with ASTM C685/C685M. Mix each batch not less than 1-1/2 minutes and not more than 5 minutes.
- B. Transit Mixers: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.
- C. Adding Water: If concrete arrives on-site with slump less than suitable for placement, do not add water that exceeds the maximum water-cement ratio or exceeds the maximum permissible slump.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 Examination**

- A. Verify lines, levels, and dimensions before proceeding with work of this section.

### **3.02 Preparation**

- A. Formwork: Comply with requirements of ACI SPEC-301. Design and fabricate forms to support all applied loads until concrete is cured and for easy removal without damage to concrete.
- B. Verify that forms are clean and free of rust before applying release agent.
- C. Coordinate placement of embedded items with erection of concrete formwork and placement of form accessories.

- D. Where new concrete is to be bonded to previously placed concrete, prepare existing surface by cleaning and applying bonding agent in accordance with bonding agent manufacturer's instructions.
  - 1. Use epoxy bonding system for bonding to damp surfaces, for structural load-bearing applications, and where curing under humid conditions is required.
  - 2. Use latex bonding agent only for non-load-bearing applications.
- E. Where new concrete with integral waterproofing is to be bonded to previously placed concrete, prepare surfaces to be treated in accordance with waterproofing manufacturer's instructions. Saturate cold joint surface with clean water, and remove excess water before application of coat of waterproofing admixture slurry. Apply slurry coat uniformly with semi-stiff bristle brush at rate recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
- F. In locations where new concrete is doweled to existing work, drill holes in existing concrete, insert steel dowels and pack solid with non-shrink grout.

### **3.03 Installing Reinforcement and Other Embedded Items**

- A. Fabricate and handle epoxy-coated reinforcing in accordance with ASTM D3963/D3963M.
- B. Comply with requirements of ACI SPEC-301. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, and accurately position, support, and secure in place to achieve not less than minimum concrete coverage required for protection.
- C. Install welded wire reinforcement in maximum possible lengths, and offset end laps in both directions. Splice laps with tie wire.
- D. Verify that anchors, seats, plates, reinforcement and other items to be cast into concrete are accurately placed, positioned securely, and will not interfere with concrete placement.

### **3.04 Placing Concrete**

- A. Place concrete in accordance with ACI PRC-304.
- B. Maintain records of concrete placement. Record date, location, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.
- C. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, waterstops, embedded parts, and formed construction joint devices will not be disturbed during concrete placement.
- D. Place concrete continuously without construction (cold) joints wherever possible; where construction joints are necessary, before next placement prepare joint surface by removing laitance and exposing the sand and sound surface mortar, by sandblasting or high-pressure water jetting.
- E. Finish concrete within the tolerances specified below.

### **3.05 Slab Jointing**

- A. Locate joints as indicated in the geotechnical report unless otherwise shown on the drawings.
- B. Anchor joint fillers and devices to prevent movement during concrete placement.
- C. Saw Cut Contraction Joints: Saw cut joints before concrete begins to cool, within 4 to 12 hours after placing; use 3/16 inch thick blade and cut at least 1 inch deep but not less than one quarter (1/4) the depth of the slab.
- D. Construction Joints: Where not otherwise indicated, use metal combination screed and key form, with removable top section for joint sealant.

- E. Extend joint filler from bottom of slab to within 1/4 inch of finished slab surface. Conform to manufacturer's requirements for joint sealer finish.

### 3.06 Concrete Finishing

- A. Repair surface defects, including tie holes, immediately after removing formwork.
- B. Unexposed Form Finish: Rub down or chip off fins or other raised areas 1/4 inch or more in height.
- C. Exposed Form Finish: Rub down or chip off and smooth fins or other raised areas 1/4 inch or more in height. Provide finish as follows:
  - 1. Smooth Rubbed Finish: Wet concrete and rub with carborundum brick or other abrasive, not more than 24 hours after form removal.
  - 2. Grout Cleaned Finish: Wet areas to be cleaned and apply grout mixture by brush or spray; scrub immediately to remove excess grout. After drying, rub vigorously with clean burlap, and keep moist for 36 hours.
  - 3. Cork Floated Finish: Immediately after form removal, apply grout with trowel or firm rubber float; compress grout with low-speed grinder, and apply final texture with cork float.
- D. Concrete Slabs: Finish to requirements of ACI 302.1R.
- E. In areas with floor drains, maintain floor elevation at walls; pitch surfaces uniformly to drains as indicated on drawings.

### 3.07 Curing and Protection

- A. Comply with requirements of ACI PRC-308. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
- B. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.
  - 1. Normal concrete: Not less than seven days.
  - 2. High early strength concrete: Not less than four days.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period.
- D. Surfaces Not in Contact with Forms:
  - 1. Final Curing: Begin after initial curing but before surface is dry.
    - a. Moisture-Retaining Cover: Seal in place with waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - b. Curing Compound: Apply in two coats at right angles, using application rate recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.08 Field Quality Control

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests.
- B. Provide free access to concrete operations at project site and cooperate with appointed firm.
- C. Submit proposed mix design of each class of concrete to inspection and testing firm for review prior to commencement of concrete operations.
- D. Tests of concrete and concrete materials may be performed at any time to ensure compliance with specified requirements.
- E. Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M, for each test, mold and cure three concrete test cylinders. Obtain test samples for every 100 cubic yards or less of each class of concrete placed.

- F. Take one additional test cylinder during cold weather concreting, cured on job site under same conditions as concrete it represents.
- G. Perform one slump test for each set of test cylinders taken, following procedures of ASTM C143/C143M.

**3.09 Defective Concrete**

- A. Test Results: The testing agency shall report test results in writing to Engineer and Contractor within 24 hours of test.
- B. Defective Concrete: Concrete not complying with required lines, details, dimensions, tolerances or specified requirements.
- C. Repair or replacement of defective concrete will be determined by the Engineer. The cost of additional testing shall be borne by Contractor when defective concrete is identified.
- D. Do not patch, fill, touch-up, repair, or replace exposed concrete except upon express direction of Engineer for each individual area.

**3.10 Schedule - Concrete Types and Finishes**

- A. Structural Walls: 3,000 psi 28 day concrete or as indicated on drawings.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 03 4100**  
**PRECAST STRUCTURAL CONCRETE**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 Section Includes**

- A. Circular or box culverts.
- B. Structural walls.
- C. Grout packing.
- D. Connection and supporting devices.

**1.02 Price and Payment Procedures**

- A. Precast Column and Beam Members:
  - 1. Structural Walls: By the face foot.
  - 2. Culverts: By the linear foot.
  - 3. Includes unit member placed and anchored.

**1.03 Reference Standards**

- A. ACI CODE-318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2019 (Reapproved 2022).
- B. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2011.
- C. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2014.
- D. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2009.
- E. ASTM A185/A185M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain, for Concrete; 2007.
- F. ASTM A416/A416M - Standard Specification for Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-Wire for Prestressed Concrete; 2012a.
- G. ASTM A497/A497M - Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Deformed, for Concrete; 2007.
- H. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2015.
- I. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- J. ASTM A767/A767M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2009.
- K. ASTM A775/A775M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Reinforcing Bars; 2007b (Reapproved 2014).
- L. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2016.
- M. ASTM D3963/D3963M - Standard Specification for Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars; 2001 (Reapproved 2007).
- N. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2015.
- O. PCI MNL-116 - Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete Products; 1999, Fourth Edition.

- P. PCI MNL-120 - PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete; 2010, Seventh Edition.
- Q. PCI MNL-123 - Design and Typical Details of Connections for Precast and Prestressed Concrete; 1988, Second Edition.
- R. PCI MNL-124 - Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete; 1989, Second Edition.
- S. PCI MNL-135 - Tolerance Manual for Precast and Prestressed Concrete Construction; 2000.
- T. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; current edition.

#### **1.04 Submittals**

- A. Product Data: Indicate standard component configurations, design loads, deflections, cambers, and bearing requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate layout, unit locations, fabrication details, unit identification marks, reinforcement, integral insulation, insulated panel system connectors, connection details, support items, dimensions, openings, and relationship to adjacent materials. Indicate design loads, deflections, cambers, bearing requirements, and special conditions.
  - 1. Submit reviewed shop drawings and design data to Engineer.

#### **1.05 Quality Assurance**

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design precast concrete members under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of precast concrete and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section.
- C. Erector Qualifications: Company specializing in erecting products of this section.
- D. Welder Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.4.

#### **1.06 Delivery, Storage, and Handling**

- A. Handle precast members in position consistent with their shape and design. Lift and support only from support points.
- B. Lifting or Handling Devices: Capable of supporting member in positions anticipated during manufacture, storage, transportation, and erection.
- C. Protect members to prevent staining, chipping, or spalling of concrete.
- D. Mark each member with date of production and final position in structure.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 Manufacturers**

- A. Structural Precast Concrete:
  - 1. Any manufacturer holding a PCI Group C Plant Certification for the types of products specified; see [www.pci.org](http://www.pci.org).

#### **2.02 Precast Units**

- A. Precast Structural Concrete Units: Comply with PCI MNL-116, PCI MNL-120, PCI MNL-123, PCI MNL-135, ACI CODE-318, and applicable codes.
  - 1. Design components to withstand dead loads and design loads in the configuration indicated on the drawings.



2. Calculate structural properties of framing members in accordance with ACI CODE-318.
3. Replace as much Portland cement as possible with fly ash, ground granulated blast furnace slag, silica fume, or rice hull ash as is consistent with strength requirements.
4. Design members exposed to the weather to provide for movement of components without damage, failure of joint seals, undue stress on fasteners or other detrimental effects, when subject to seasonal or cyclic day/night temperature ranges.
5. Design system to accommodate construction tolerances, deflection of other structural members and clearances of intended openings.

**2.03 Materials**

- A. Cement: White Portland type, complying with ASTM C150/C150M, Type I.
- B. Aggregate, Sand, Water, Admixtures: Determined by precast fabricator as appropriate to design requirements and PCI MNL-116.

**2.04 Reinforcement**

- A. Tensioning Steel Tendons: ASTM A 416/A 416M, Grade 250 (1725) or 270 (1860); seven-wire stranded steel cable; full length without splices.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 615/A 615M Grade 40 (280).
  1. Plain or deformed billet-steel bars.
  2. Unfinished.
- C. Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185/A 185M plain type; in flat sheets or coiled rolls.

**2.05 Fabrication**

- A. Comply with fabrication procedures specified in PCI MNL-116.
- B. Fabricate and handle epoxy-coated reinforcing bars in accordance with ASTM D3963/D3963M.
- C. Maintain plant records and quality control program during production of precast members. Make records available upon request.
- D. Ensure reinforcing steel, anchors, inserts, plates, angles, and other cast-in items are embedded and located as indicated on shop drawings.
- E. Tension reinforcement tendons as required to achieve design load criteria.
- F. Provide required openings with a dimension larger than 10 inches and embed accessories provided under other sections of the specifications, at indicated locations.
- G. Exposed Ends at Stressing Tendons: Fill recess with non-shrink or epoxy grout, trowel flush.

**2.06 Finishes**

- A. Ensure exposed-to-view finish surfaces of precast concrete members are uniform in color and appearance.
- B. Cure members under identical conditions to develop required concrete quality, and minimize appearance blemishes such as non-uniformity, staining, or surface cracking.
- C. Finish members to PCI MNL-116 Commercial grade.
- D. Plant Finish: Normal plant finish; surface may contain small surface holes caused by air bubbles, minor chips or spalling at edges or ends, without major discoloration.

- E. Exposed-to-View Finish: Normal plant finish with fins and protrusions removed, ground edges and ends, flat face surfaces.
- F. Rubbed Finish: Surface holes or bubbles over 1/4 inch filled with matching cementitious paste, fins or protrusions removed and surface ground smooth, surface then rubbed with neat cementitious paste to smooth and even color and texture.
- G. Sandblast Finish: Lightly sandblast to achieve partial exposure of aggregate.

## **2.07 Source Quality Control**

- A. Test samples in accordance with applicable ASTM standard.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 Examination**

- A. Verify that site conditions are ready to receive work and field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

### **3.02 Preparation**

- A. Prepare support equipment for the erection procedure, temporary bracing, and induced loads during erection.

### **3.03 Erection**

- A. Install members without damage to structural capacity, shape, or finish. Replace or repair damaged members.
- B. Align and maintain uniform horizontal and vertical joints, as installation progresses.
- C. Maintain temporary bracing in place until final support is provided. Protect members from staining.
- D. Provide temporary lateral support to prevent bowing, twisting, or warping of members.
- E. Adjust differential camber between precast members to tolerance before final attachment.
- F. Install bearing pads.
- G. Level differential elevation of adjoining horizontal members with grout.
- H. Set vertical units dry, without grout, attaining joint dimension with lead or plastic spacers.
- I. Secure units in place.

### **3.04 Tolerances**

- A. Install members level and plumb within allowable tolerances.
- B. Conform to PCI MNL-135 for installation tolerances.
- C. When members cannot be adjusted to comply with design or tolerance criteria, cease work and advise Engineer. Execute modifications as directed.

### **3.05 Protection**

- A. Protect members from damage caused by field welding or erection operations.
- B. Provide non-combustible shields during welding operations.

### **3.06 Cleaning**

- A. Clean weld marks, dirt, or blemishes from surface of exposed members.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 04 0511**  
**MASONRY MORTARING AND GROUTING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Mortar for masonry.
- B. Grout for masonry.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 - Specification for Masonry Structures; American Concrete Institute International; 2008.
- B. ASTM C5 - Standard Specification for Quicklime for Structural Purposes; 2010.
- C. ASTM C91/C91M - Standard Specification for Masonry Cement; 2012.
- D. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; 2015.
- E. ASTM C144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar; 2011.
- F. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2016.
- G. ASTM C207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes; 2006 (Reapproved 2011).
- H. ASTM C270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry; 2014a.
- I. ASTM C387/C387M - Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Concrete and High Strength Mortar; 2011b.
- J. ASTM C404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout; 2011.
- K. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry; 2010.
- L. ASTM C780 - Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry; 2012.
- M. ASTM C979/C979M - Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete; 2010.
- N. ASTM C1019 - Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout; 2013.
- O. ASTM C1072 - Standard Test Method for Measurement of Masonry Flexural Bond Strength; 2013.
- P. ASTM C1142 - Standard Specification for Extended Life Mortar for Unit Masonry; 1995 (Reapproved 2013).
- Q. ASTM C1314 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Masonry Prisms; 2014.
- R. ASTM E518/E518M - Standard Test Methods for Flexural Bond Strength of Masonry; 2010.
- S. TMS 402/602 - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures; 2016.
- T. IMIAWC (CW) - Recommended Practices & Guide Specifications for Cold Weather Masonry Construction; International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council; 1993.
- U. IMIAWC (HW) - Recommended Practices & Guide Specifications for Hot Weather Masonry Construction; International Masonry Industry All-Weather Council; current edition.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include design mix and indicate whether the Proportion or Property specification of ASTM C270 is to be used.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples of mortar, illustrating mortar color and color range.
- C. Reports: Submit reports on mortar indicating compliance of mortar to property requirements of ASTM C270 and test and evaluation reports per ASTM C780.
- D. Reports: Submit reports on grout indicating compliance of component grout materials to requirements of ASTM C476 and test and evaluation reports to requirements of ASTM C1019.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with provisions of TMS 402/602, except where exceeded by requirements of Contract Documents.
  - 1. Maintain one copy of each document on project site.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Maintain packaged materials clean, dry, and protected against dampness, freezing, and foreign matter.

**1.06 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 40 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
- B. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to maximum 90 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MORTAR AND GROUT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Mortar Mix Designs: ASTM C270, Property Specification.

**2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91, types as scheduled in this section.
  - 1. Colored mortar: Premixed cement.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I - Normal.
- C. Packaged Dry Mortar: ASTM C 387/C 387M.
- D. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207
- E. Quicklime: ASTM C5, non-hydraulic type.
- F. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C144.
- G. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C404.
- H. Pigments for Colored Mortar: Pure, concentrated mineral pigments specifically intended for mixing into mortar and complying with ASTM C979/C979M.
  - 1. Color(s): As indicated on drawings.
- I. Water: Clean and potable.
- J. Accelerating Admixture: Nonchloride type for use in cold weather.

- K. Moisture-Resistant Admixture: Water repellent compound designed to reduce capillarity.
- L. Bonding Agent: Latex or epoxy type.

### 2.03 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Ready Mixed Mortar: ASTM C 1142.
- B. Stain Resistant Pointing Mortar: One part Portland cement, 1/8 part hydrated lime, and two parts graded (80 mesh) aggregate, proportioned by volume. Add aluminum tristearate, calcium stearate, or ammonium stearate equal to 2 percent of Portland cement by weight.
- C. Colored Mortar: Proportion selected pigments and other ingredients without exceeding manufacturer's recommended pigment-to-cement ratio.

### 2.04 MORTAR MIXING

- A. Thoroughly mix mortar ingredients using mechanical batch mixer, in accordance with ASTM C270 and in quantities needed for immediate use.
- B. Maintain sand uniformly damp immediately before the mixing process.
- C. Add mortar color and admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide uniformity of mix and coloration.
- D. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of mortar.
- E. If water is lost by evaporation, re-temper only within two hours of mixing.

### 2.05 GROUT MIXES

- A. Bond Beams and Lintels: 3,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; provide premixed type in accordance with ASTM C 94/C 94M, or mix in accordance with ASTM C 476.
  - 1. Fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less.
  - 2. Coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.
- B. Engineered Masonry: 3,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; provide premixed type in accordance with ASTM C 94/C 94M, or mix in accordance with ASTM C 476.
  - 1. Fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less.
  - 2. Coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.

### 2.06 GROUT MIXING

- A. Mix grout in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M.
- B. Thoroughly mix grout ingredients in quantities needed for immediate use in accordance with ASTM C476 for fine and coarse grout.
- C. Add admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; mix uniformly.
- D. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of grout.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Apply bonding agent to existing concrete surfaces.
- B. Plug clean-out holes for grouted masonry with brick or block masonry units. Brace masonry to resist wet grout pressure.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install mortar and grout to requirements of section(s) in which masonry is specified.
- B. Work grout into masonry cores and cavities to eliminate voids.

- C. Do not install grout in lifts greater than 3 inches without consolidating grout by rodding.
- D. Do not displace reinforcement while placing grout.
- E. Remove excess mortar from grout spaces.

### 3.03 GROUTING

- A. Use either high-lift or low-lift grouting techniques, at Contractor's option, subject to other limitations of Contract Documents.
- B. Perform grouting by means of high-lift technique, except in locations that mandate use of low-lift grouting technique.
  - 1. Do not use high-lift grouting where size of cavities mandates use of fine grout.
- C. Low-Lift Grouting:
  - 1. Limit height of pours to 12 inches.
  - 2. Limit height of masonry to 12 inches above each pour.
  - 3. Pour grout only after vertical reinforcing is in place; place horizontal reinforcing as grout is poured. Prevent displacement of bars as grout is poured.
  - 4. Place grout for each pour continuously and consolidate immediately; do not interrupt pours for more than 1-1/2 hours.
- D. High-Lift Grouting:
  - 1. Verify that horizontal and vertical reinforcement is in proper position and adequately secured before beginning pours.
  - 2. Brick: Limit pours to maximum 16 feet in height and 25 feet horizontally.
  - 3. Hollow Masonry: Limit lifts to maximum 4 feet and pours to maximum height of 24 feet.
  - 4. Place grout for spanning elements in single, continuous pour.

### 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and evaluate mortar in accordance with ASTM C780 procedures.
  - 1. Test with same frequency as specified for masonry units.
- B. Test and evaluate grout in accordance with ASTM C1019 procedures.
  - 1. Test with same frequency as specified for masonry units.
- C. Prism Tests: Test masonry and mortar panels for compressive strength in accordance with ASTM C1314, and for flexural bond strength in accordance with ASTM C1072 or ASTM E518/E518M; perform tests and evaluate results as specified in individual masonry sections.

### 3.05 SCHEDULES

- A. Exterior Cavity Wall: Type S mortar with Type N pointing mortar.
- B. Loading Dock Area, No. 100: CMU partitions with Type N mortar.
- C. Conference Room 102: Glass Unit Masonry with Type N mortar and Type O pointing mortar.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 05 1200.10**  
**PIPE RAILING AND BRACKETS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Installation of handrail brackets.
- B. Installation of pipe railing.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 05 1200.20 - Metal Work.
- B. Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A 53: Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit shop drawings to the Engineer to indicate compliance with specifications. Show locations, methods of supporting, methods of anchoring and finishes.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Pipe Railing: Shop fabricated black iron pipe of size, shape and detail indicated on the drawings. ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B, Schedule 40.
  - 1. Preassemble items in shop to greatest extent possible, so as to minimize field splicing and assembly of units at project site. Disassemble units only to extent necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation.
  - 2. Use materials of size and thicknesses shown or if not shown of required size and thickness to produce adequate strength and durability in finished product for intended use. Work to dimensions shown or checked on shop drawings, using proven detail of fabrication and support.
  - 3. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32" unless otherwise shown. Form bent metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the work.
  - 4. Weld corners and seams continuously.
  - 5. Grind exposed welds smooth and flush, to match and blend with adjoining surfaces
  - 6. Join posts and rails by mitered and welded joints made by fitting post to top rail and intermediate rail to post, mitering corners, groove welding joints and grinding smooth.
  - 7. Railings may be bent at corners instead of joining provided bends are uniformly formed in jigs with cylindrical cross-section of pipe maintained throughout entire bend.
  - 8. Anchor posts in concrete by means of 4" long pipe sleeves set and anchored into concrete. Provide sleeves of galvanized, standard weight, steel pipe, not more than 1/2" greater than the outside diameter of inserted pipe post.
- B. Finish: Shop prime paint interior, galvanize exterior.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Adjust railing prior to securing in place to insure proper matching at butting joints and correct alignment throughout their length. Space posts not more than 5 feet on centers. Plumb posts in each direction.
- B. Anchor posts in concrete by means of pipe sleeves set and anchored into concrete. Set posts in sleeves and fill annular space between post and sleeve solid with molten lead and sulphur or a quick setting hydraulic cement.
- C. Anchor rail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges anchored into wall construction with lead expansion shield and bolts.
- D. Space brackets one foot from each end of handrail and not over five foot on centers throughout run.
- E. Securely anchor brackets to wall to resist a horizontal load of 300 lbs.
- F. Immediately after erection, clean and brush field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint and paint all exposed areas with same material as used for ship painting.
- G. Sand field welds and abraded areas which will be exposed in the finish work.
- H. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils in accordance with Section 09 9000.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 05 1200.20****METAL WORK****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Work includes metal fences and gates, railings and handrails, all welding and splicing, grinding, cleaning, and preparation for finish.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 05 1200.10 - Pipe Railing and Brackets.
- B. Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating.

**1.03 REFERENCES AND STANDARDS**

- A. The following references and standards are hereby made a part of this Section and shall conform to the applicable requirements therein except as otherwise specified herein or shown on the Drawings. Nothing contained herein shall be construed as permitting work that is contrary to code requirements or government rules and regulations.
  - 1. "Code for Arc and Gas Welding in Building Construction" of American Welding Society, AWS D1.0, latest edition with current supplements and addenda.
- B. Reference Standards
  - 1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM): A36 Specifications for Structural Steel.
  - 2. A500-73 Cold Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
  - 3. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC): Standard for Details and Connections of Structural Steel.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Shop Drawings
  - 1. Submit complete and accurately detailed steel shop drawings to Engineer for review. Detail steel in accordance with requirements of AISC.
    - a. Indicate types and grades of steel.
    - b. Indicate relationship to adjacent construction (walls, etc.).
    - c. Provide certified mill reports on steel.
    - d. Indicate splices and splicing methods.
    - e. Indicate all fasteners and hardware.
- B. Samples
  - 1. Submit two samples of each finished steel shape to Owner. Assemble one set of samples with required welds or fasteners to demonstrate fitting. Do not fabricate steel until samples are approved by Owner.

**1.05 PRODUCT HANDLING**

- A. Deliver iron and steel to site with identification tags securely wired into place. Store steel to prevent damage and protect from corrosion and deformation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 STEEL**

- A. Structural Steel: Clean and free from rust, scale, or coating that will reduce bond. Steel shall conform to dimensional requirements, straightness, and flatness of face.
- B. Fastenings (General): Furnish all bolts, nuts, screws, clips, washers, and any other fastenings necessary for proper erection of items specified herein. For Ferrous Metal, use stainless steel or galvanized on exterior.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 CONDITION OF SURFACES**

- A. Inspect all surfaces to receive site metal work and report all defects which would interfere with this installation. Starting work implies acceptance of surfaces as satisfactory.

**3.02 WORKMANSHIP**

- A. General Requirements
  - 1. Verify all measurements at job.
  - 2. Coordinate all metal work with adjoining work for details of attachment, fittings, etc. Do all cutting, shearing, drilling, punching, threading, tapping, etc., required for the work or for attachment of adjacent work. Drill or punch holes; do not use cutting torch. Shearing and punching shall have true lines and surfaces.
  - 3. Conceal all fastenings where practicable. Thickness of metal and details of assembly and supports shall give ample strength and stiffness. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water.
  - 4. Make all permanent connections in ferrous metal surfaces using welds where at all possible; do not use bolts or screws where they can be avoided.
  - 5. Provide all lugs, clips, anchors, and miscellaneous fastenings necessary for the complete assembly and installation.
  - 6. Set all work plumb, true, right, and neatly trimmed out. Miter corners and angles of exposed moldings and frames unless otherwise noted.
  - 7. Where items must be incorporated or built into adjacent work, deliver to trade responsible for such work in sufficient time that progress of work is not delayed. Be responsible for proper location of such items.
- B. Welding
  - 1. Welds shall be made only by operators experienced in performing the type of work indicated.
  - 2. Welds normally exposed to view in the finished work shall be uniformly made and shall be ground smooth.
- C. Bolted, and Screwed Connections
  - 1. In general, use bolts for field connections only and then only as detailed. Provide washers under all heads and nuts bearing on wood. Draw all nuts tight and nick threads of permanent connections to prevent loosening. Use beveled washers where bearing is on sloped surfaces.
  - 2. Where screws must be used for permanent connections in ferrous metal, use flat headed type, countersunk, with screw slots filled and finished smooth and flush.

**3.03 PROTECTION AND CLEANING**

- A. Remove all soil and foreign matter from finished surfaces and apply such protective measures as may be required to prevent damage or discoloration of any kind until acceptance of project by Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 09 9000  
PAINTING AND COATING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Surface preparation.
- B. Field application of paints and other coatings.
- C. Scope: Finish all interior and exterior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
  - 1. Items fully factory-finished unless specifically so indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
  - 2. Items indicated to receive other finishes.
  - 3. Items indicated to remain unfinished.
  - 4. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, and operating parts of equipment.
  - 5. Stainless steel, anodized aluminum, bronze, terne, and lead items.
  - 6. Brick, architectural concrete, cast stone, integrally colored plaster and stucco.
  - 7. Glass.
  - 8. Concrete masonry in utility, mechanical, and electrical spaces.
  - 9. Acoustical materials, unless specifically so indicated.
  - 10. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 32 1723.13 - Painted Pavement Markings.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Conform to ASTM D16 for interpretation of terms used in this section.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 40 CFR 59, Subpart D - National Volatile Organic Compound Emission Standards for Architectural Coatings; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; current edition.
- B. ASTM D16 - Standard Terminology for Paint, Related Coatings, Materials, and Applications; 2016.
- C. ASTM D4442 - Standard Test Methods for Direct Moisture Content Measurement of Wood and Wood-Based Materials; 2016.
- D. GreenSeal GS-11 - Paints, Coatings, Stains, and Sealers; 2015.
- E. SSPC (PM1) - Good Painting Practice: SSPC Painting Manual, Vol. 1; Society for Protective Coatings; Fourth Edition.
- F. USGBC LEED-NC - LEED Green Building Rating System for New Construction and Major Renovations; 2016.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on all finishing products and special coatings, including VOC content.

- B. Samples: Submit two painted samples, illustrating selected colors and textures for each color and system selected with specified coats cascaded.
- C. Certification: By manufacturer that all paints and coatings do not contain any of the prohibited chemicals specified; GreenSeal GS-11 certification is not required but if provided shall constitute acceptable certification.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate special surface preparation procedures.
- E. Maintenance Data: Submit data on cleaning, touch-up, and repair of painted and coated surfaces.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Paint and Coatings: 1 gallon of each color and type; store where directed.
  - 2. Label each container with color and type in addition to the manufacturer's label.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified.

**1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

**1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is outside the humidity ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- D. Minimum Application Temperatures for Latex Paints: 45 degrees F for interiors; 50 degrees F for exterior; unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Provide all paint and coating products used in any individual system from the same manufacturer; no exceptions.
- B. Provide all paint and coating products from the same manufacturer to the greatest extent possible.

**2.02 PAINTS AND COATINGS - GENERAL**

- A. Paints and Coatings: Ready mixed, unless intended to be a field-catalyzed coating.
  - 1. Provide paints and coatings of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.

2. Provide materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  3. For opaque finishes, tint each coat including primer coat and intermediate coats, one-half shade lighter than succeeding coat, with final finish coat as base color.
  4. Supply each coating material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
  5. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute coatings or add materials to coatings unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.
- B. Primers: As follows unless other primer is required or recommended by manufacturer of top coats; where the manufacturer offers options on primers for a particular substrate, use primer categorized as "best" by the manufacturer.
- C. Chemical Content: The following compounds are prohibited:
1. Aromatic Compounds: In excess of 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).
  2. Acrolein, acrylonitrile, antimony, benzene, butyl benzyl phthalate, cadmium, di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate, di-n-butyl phthalate, di-n-octyl phthalate, 1,2-dichlorobenzene, diethyl phthalate, dimethyl phthalate, ethylbenzene, formaldehyde, hexavalent chromium, isophorone, lead, mercury, methyl ethyl ketone, methyl isobutyl ketone, methylene chloride, naphthalene, toluene (methylbenzene), 1,1,1-trichloroethane, vinyl chloride.
- D. Flammability: Comply with applicable code for surface burning characteristics.
- E. Colors: As indicated on drawings or as required by local jurisdictional authority.

### **2.03 ACCESSORY MATERIALS**

- A. Accessory Materials: Provide all primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials required to achieve the finishes specified whether specifically indicated or not; commercial quality.
- B. Patching Material: Latex filler.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin application of coatings until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- C. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially affect proper application.
- D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Engineer of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.
- E. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.
- F. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces is suitable.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to coating application.

- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Remove or repair existing coatings that exhibit surface defects.
- D. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- E. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.
- F. Remove mildew from impervious surfaces. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- G. Concrete and Unit Masonry Surfaces to be Painted: Remove dirt, loose mortar, scale, salt or alkali powder, and other foreign matter. Remove oil and grease with a solution of tri-sodium phosphate; rinse well and allow to dry. Remove stains caused by weathering of corroding metals with a solution of sodium metasilicate after thoroughly wetting with water. Allow to dry.
- H. Asphalt, Creosote, or Bituminous Surfaces to be Painted: Remove foreign particles to permit adhesion of finishing materials. Apply latex based or compatible sealer or primer.
- I. Insulated Coverings to be Painted: Remove dirt, grease, and oil from canvas and cotton.
- J. Concrete Floors and Traffic Surfaces to be Painted: Remove contamination, acid etch, and rinse floors with clear water. Verify required acid-alkali balance is achieved. Allow to dry.
- K. Aluminum Surfaces to be Painted: Remove surface contamination by steam or high pressure water. Remove oxidation with acid etch and solvent washing. Apply etching primer immediately following cleaning.
- L. Copper Surfaces to be Painted: Remove contamination by steam, high pressure water, or solvent washing. Apply vinyl etch primer immediately following cleaning.
- M. Galvanized Surfaces to be Painted: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent. Apply coat of etching primer.
- N. Uncorroded Uncoated Steel and Iron Surfaces to be Painted: Remove grease, mill scale, weld splatter, dirt, and rust. Where heavy coatings of scale are evident, remove by hand or power tool wire brushing or sandblasting; clean by washing with solvent. Apply a treatment of phosphoric acid solution, ensuring weld joints, bolts, and nuts are similarly cleaned. Prime paint entire surface; spot prime after repairs.
- O. Shop-Primed Steel Surfaces to be Finish Painted: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces.
- P. Exterior Wood Surfaces to Receive Opaque Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior calking compound after prime coat has been applied. Back prime concealed surfaces before installation.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Where adjacent sealant is to be painted, do not apply finish coats until sealant is applied.
- C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.
- D. Apply each coat to uniform appearance.

- E. Dark Colors and Deep Clear Colors: Regardless of number of coats specified, apply as many coats as necessary for complete hide.
- F. Sand wood and metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- G. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.

**3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect finished coatings until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up damaged coatings after Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 31 1000****SITE CLEARING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Clearing and protection of vegetation.
- B. Removal of existing debris.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5713 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control.
- B. Section 31 1000.10 - Tree Protection.
- C. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- D. Section 31 2323 - Fill.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS -- NOT USED****1.04 SUBMITTALS -- NOT USED****1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Clearing Firm: Company specializing in the type of work required.
- B. State and local laws and code requirements shall govern the hauling and disposal of trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, rubbish, debris and other matter.
- C. Contractor shall not clear site until a permit is obtained from the authorized regulatory agency.
- D. Air pollution caused by dust and dirt shall be controlled and comply with governing regulations.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS -- NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 SITE CLEARING**

- A. Remove from site and satisfactorily dispose of all trees, shrubs, stumps, roots, brush, masonry, rubbish, scrap, debris, pavement, curbs, fences and miscellaneous other structures required to permit construction of new work.
- B. Minimize production of dust due to clearing operations; do not use water if that will result in ice, flooding, sedimentation of public waterways or storm sewers, or other pollution.

**3.02 EXISTING UTILITIES AND BUILT ELEMENTS**

- A. Coordinate work with utility companies; notify before starting work and comply with their requirements; obtain and pay for required permits.
- B. Protect existing utilities to remain from damage.
- C. Do not disrupt public utilities without permit from authority having jurisdiction.
- D. Protect existing structures and other elements that are not to be removed.

**3.03 VEGETATION**

- A. Scope: Remove trees, shrubs, brush, and stumps in areas to be covered by building structure, paving, landscape areas, and planting beds.
- B. Do not begin clearing until vegetation to be relocated has been removed.

- C. Do not remove or damage vegetation beyond the limits indicated on drawings.
- D. Install substantial, highly visible chain link or orange mesh fences at least 4 feet high to prevent inadvertent damage to vegetation at the removal limits. Reference tree protection detail in drawings.
- E. In areas where vegetation must be removed but no construction will occur, remove vegetation with minimum disturbance of the subsoil.
- F. Vegetation Removed: Do not burn, bury, landfill, or leave on site, unless indicated on drawings.
  - 1. Chip, grind, crush, or shred vegetation for mulching, composting, or other purposes; preference should be given to on-site uses.
  - 2. Trees: Sell if marketable; if not, treat as specified for other vegetation removed.
  - 3. Existing Stumps: Treat as specified for other vegetation removed; completely remove stumps and roots to depth of 6 inches below subgrade.
  - 4. Fill holes left by removal of stumps and roots, using suitable fill material, with top surface neat in appearance and smooth enough not to constitute a hazard to pedestrians.
- G. Dead Wood: Remove all dead trees (standing or down), limbs, and dry brush on entire site; treat as specified for vegetation removed.
- H. Restoration: If vegetation outside removal limits or within specified protective fences is damaged or destroyed due to subsequent construction operations, replace at no cost to Owner. Contractor shall warrant damaged vegetation for 18 months.

**3.04 DEBRIS**

- A. Remove debris, junk, and trash from site.
- B. Leave site in clean condition, ready for subsequent work.
- C. Clean up spillage and wind-blown debris from public and private lands.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 1000.10****TREE PROTECTION****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Protection of Existing Trees.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 1000 - Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 2200 - Grading.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Tree Protection Fence: By the linear foot. Includes chain link or plastic mesh fence, posts, tie wire, and installation.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI A300-2008 Pruning.
- B. Local Municipal Code.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS -- NOT USED****1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Employ certified arborist or landscape architect to supervise or perform tree protection work as required.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Tree Protection Fence: 4 feet high galvanized chain link.
  - 1. Posts: 1-1/2 inch at 6 feet on center, 2 feet deep.
  - 2. Tension Wire: Not less than 12 gauge at top and 6 inches above existing grade.
- B. Tree Protection Fence: 4 feet high heavy gauge orange plastic mesh with 2" openings.
  - 1. Posts: "T" posts at 6 feet on center, 2 feet deep.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 TREE PROTECTION FENCE**

- A. Install at Root Protection Zone of all existing trees to be protected as shown on drawing.
- B. Root Protection Zone shall be located 1 foot radius from trunk for every 1 inch diameter of trunk at 4 feet from ground. The diameter of a multi-trunk tree is calculated as the sum of the largest trunk plus half of the sum of additional trunks at 4.5 feet from ground.
- C. Fence may be located a minimum of half of the root protection radius if approved by the regulatory authority, Engineer, or Owner.
- D. Fence Location Detail: See detail as shown on drawings.

**3.02 TREE PROTECTION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install tree protection fence prior to any clearing, excavation, or grading and maintain in good repair for the duration of all construction work unless otherwise directed.
- B. No construction operations are allowed within the Root Protection Zone.

- C. Root Protection Zone shall be sustained in a natural state and shall be free from vehicular or mechanical traffic; no fill, equipment, liquids, or construction debris shall be placed inside the protective barrier.
- D. Root Protection Zone shall be covered with 6" of mulch to reduce moisture stress.
- E. The proposed finished grade and elevation of land within the Root Protection Zone of any trees to be preserved shall not be raised or lowered more than 3 inches. Wellington and retaining methods are allowed outside the Root Protection Zone.
- F. Root Protection Zone shall remain pervious, i.e. ground cover or turf at completion of landscape design.
- G. No roots may be cut closer than 6 feet from the base of any tree. Roots cut within the Root Protection Zone will only be allowed on one side of the tree. Any roots that need to be cut within the Root Protection Zone will be cut using a saw-type trencher, and all cut roots will be painted.
- H. All trees impacted by construction shall be fertilized with an organic tree fertilizer prior to construction and again at the end of construction. The area within the protective fencing shall be mulched with about 6 inches of mulch. Water barrels shall be placed within the Root Protection Zone to irrigate these trees if necessary.
- I. No trash or warming fires shall be placed within 50 feet of any tree.
- J. No pedestrian traffic shall occur within dripline of any tree.

### **3.03 DAMAGE TO PROTECTED TREES**

- A. Trim trees and shrubs when doing so will prevent removal or damage. Trimmed or damaged trees shall be treated or repaired under supervision of a certified arborist or landscape architect.
- B. Any damage done to existing tree crowns or root systems shall be repaired immediately under supervision of a certified arborist. All wounds to oaks shall be painted with pruning paint within 20 minutes after damage. Roots exposed during construction operations will be cut cleanly. Cut surfaces shall be painted and topsoil and mulch placed over exposed root area immediately.
- C. Branch Pruning Detail: See detail as shown on drawings.
- D. Contractor shall compensate owner for damage to existing trees designated to remain in the amount of \$200 per caliper inch measured 4 feet from ground. This amount will be deducted from final payment.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 2200****GRADING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Removal of topsoil.
- B. Rough grading the site.
- C. Finish grading.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 1000 - Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 1000.10 - Tree Protection.
- C. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- D. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- E. Project Geotechnical Report.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Topsoil:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, and compacting.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of utilities remaining by horizontal dimensions, elevations or inverts, and slope gradients.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with available geotechnical engineering and landscape specifications.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Topsoil: Topsoil excavated on-site; friable loam, imported borrow; local borrow.
  - 1. Graded.
  - 2. Free of roots, rocks larger than 1/2 inch, subsoil, debris, large weeds and foreign matter.
- B. Other Fill Materials: See Section 31 2323.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that survey bench mark and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.
- B. Verify the absence of standing or ponding water.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Stake and flag locations of known utilities.
- C. Locate, identify, and protect from damage above- and below-grade utilities to remain.
- D. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.

- E. Provide temporary means and methods to remove all standing or ponding water from areas prior to grading.
- F. Protect site features to remain, including but not limited to bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs, from damage by grading equipment and vehicular traffic.
- G. Protect trees to remain. Reference Section 31 1000.10.
- H. Protect features to remain as a portion of final landscaping.

### **3.03 ROUGH GRADING**

- A. Remove topsoil from areas to be further excavated, without mixing with foreign materials.
- B. Do not remove topsoil when wet.
- C. Remove subsoil from areas to be further excavated.
- D. Do not remove wet subsoil, unless it is subsequently processed to obtain optimum moisture content.
- E. When excavating through roots, perform work by hand and cut roots with sharp axe.
- F. See Section 31 2323 for filling procedures.
- G. Benching Slopes: Horizontally bench slopes greater than 4:1 to key fill material to slope for firm bearing.
- H. Stability: Replace damaged or displaced subsoil to same requirements as for specified fill.
- I. Remove and replace soils deemed unsuitable by classification and which are excessively moist due to lack surface water control.

### **3.04 SOIL REMOVAL**

- A. Stockpile topsoil to be re-used on site; remove remainder from site.
- B. Stockpile subsoil to be re-used on site; remove remainder from site.
- C. Stockpiles: Use areas designated on site; pile depth not to exceed 8 feet; protect from erosion.

### **3.05 FINISH GRADING**

- A. Before Finish Grading:
  - 1. Verify building and trench backfilling have been inspected.
  - 2. Verify subgrade has been contoured and compacted.
- B. Remove debris, roots, branches, stones, in excess of 1-1/2 inch in size. Remove soil contaminated with petroleum products.
- C. Where topsoil is to be placed, scarify surface to depth of 3 inches.
- D. In areas where vehicles or equipment have compacted soil, scarify surface to depth of 3 inches.
- E. Place topsoil in areas indicated on drawings.
- F. If not otherwise indicated, place topsoil to the following compacted thicknesses:
  - 1. Areas to be Seeded with Grass: 4 inches.
  - 2. Areas to be Sodded: 4 inches.
- G. Place topsoil during dry weather.
- H. Remove roots, weeds, rocks, and foreign material while spreading.

- I. Near plants, buildings, and curbs spread topsoil manually to prevent damage.
- J. Fine grade topsoil to eliminate uneven areas and low spots. Maintain profiles and contour of subgrade.
- K. Lightly compact placed topsoil.
- L. Maintain stability of topsoil during inclement weather. Replace topsoil in areas where surface water has eroded thickness below specifications.

**3.06 TOLERANCES**

- A. Top Surface of Subgrade: Plus or minus 0.10 foot (1-3/16 inches) from required elevation.
- B. Top Surface of Finish Grade: Plus or minus 0.04 foot (1/2 inch).

**3.07 REPAIR AND RESTORATION**

- A. Existing Facilities, Utilities, and Site Features to Remain: If damaged due to this work, repair or replace to original condition.
- B. Trees to Remain: If damaged due to this work, trim broken branches and repair bark wounds; if root damage has occurred, obtain instructions from Engineer as to remedy.
- C. Other Existing Vegetation to Remain: If damaged due to this work, replace with vegetation of equivalent species and size.

**3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 31 2323 for compaction density testing.

**3.09 CLEANING**

- A. Remove unused stockpiled topsoil and subsoil. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing water.
- B. Leave site clean and raked, ready to receive landscaping.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 2316****EXCAVATION****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Excavating for site grading, paving, structures.
- B. Trenching for utilities from 5 feet outside the building to utility main connections.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5713 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control.
- B. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- C. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- D. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.
- E. Section 31 2316.14 - Trench Excavation Protection.
- F. Project Geotechnical Report.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Excavating Soil Materials:
  - 1. Measurement method: By the cubic yard measured before removal.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that survey bench mark and intended elevations for the work are as indicated.
- B. Verify that existing topography is as shown in the plans. Coordinate with the engineer for any discrepancies prior to start of excavation.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.
- B. Excavate and backfill, in advance of construction, test pits to determine conditions or location of existing utilities.
- C. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain and protect from damage.
- D. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.
- E. Protect bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, curbs, and existing utilities from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic. Repair damage at no additional charge to Owner, including utility company charges.
- F. Protect plants, lawns, rock outcroppings, and other features to remain.
- G. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water from draining into excavation. Provide temporary means and methods, as required, to maintain surface water diversion until no longer needed, or as directed by Engineer.

**3.03 EXCAVATING**

- A. Excavate to accommodate construction operations and to lines and grades indicated on the drawings.



- B. Notify Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
- C. Excavate to provide adequate work space and clearance for concrete forms. Do not undercut excavation face for extended footings.
- D. Steep slope and trench excavations shall conform with OSHA standards for shoring and safety protection.
- E. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
- F. Cut utility trenches wide enough to allow inspection of installed utilities. Reference Sections 31 2316.13 and .
- G. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu yd measured by volume.
- H. Provide temporary means and methods, as required, to remove all water from excavations until directed by Engineer. Remove and replace soils deemed suitable by classification and which are excessively moist due to lack of dewatering or surface water control.
- I. Stockpile excavated material to be re-used in area designated on site.
- J. Remove excess excavated material from site. Transport and place in accordance with all applicable regulations. Do not dispose of excess material in any stream or watercourse. Do not dump excess material on public property. Do not dispose of excess material on private property unless authorized by Owner.
- K. Structure and Roadway Excavations:
  - 1. Subgrade shall be firm, dense, and compacted to 95 percent maximum density at a moisture content between optimum and optimum plus or minus 4 percent unless otherwise indicated in the Project Geotechnical Report.
  - 2. Bottom of excavations for footings and slabs shall be level, clean, dry, and clear of loose material.
  - 3. Remove unsuitable material and replace with suitable material as required or directed by Testing Laboratory.
  - 4. Refill over-excavated areas with properly compacted select backfill material.
  - 5. Extend excavation 5 feet minimum on each side of structure or footing unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
  - 6. Proof roll exposed design subgrade using a 25 ton pneumatic tire roller, maintaining a minimum tire pressure of 75 psi. Proof rolling operation shall be inspected by Testing Laboratory. Any soft or unconsolidated zones or areas detected by proof rolling operations shall be undercut as directed by the Engineer or the Testing Laboratory. Undercut subgrade shall be scarified to a minimum depth of six inches and compacted to a minimum of 95 percent maximum density at a moisture content between optimum and optimum plus 4 percent unless otherwise indicated in the Project Geotechnical Report. After the undercut subgrade has been scarified and compacted, the undercut shall be backfilled with select backfill to the design subgrade elevation. The final subgrade shall be reviewed by the Engineer or the Testing Laboratory.
  - 7. The surface of the subgrade for street excavations shall be finished to the lines and grades as established, and be in conformity with the typical sections shown on the plans. Any deviation in excess of one-half inch in cross section, and in a length of sixteen feet, measured longitudinally, shall be corrected by loosening, adding, or removing material, reshaping and compacting by sprinkling and rolling.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Provide for visual inspection of load-bearing excavated surfaces by Engineer before placement of foundations.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Divert surface flow from rains or water discharges from the excavation.
- B. Prevent displacement of banks and keep loose soil from falling into excavation; maintain soil stability.
- C. Protect open excavations from rainfall, runoff, freezing groundwater, or excessive drying so as to maintain foundation subgrade in satisfactory, undisturbed condition.
- D. Protect bottom of excavations and exposed soil against physical disturbance, rain, and freeze.
- E. Keep excavations free of standing water and completely free of water during concrete placement.
- F. Protect footing excavations; construct concrete footings same day excavation is made wherever possible.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 2316.13****TRENCHING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Excavating, backfilling and compacting for utilities outside of any structure to utility main connections or storm drainage outfalls.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Project Geotechnical Report.
- B. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- C. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- D. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- E. Section 31 2316.14 - Trench Excavation Protection.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Excavating Soil Materials:
  - 1. Measurement method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating to required elevations, loading and placing materials in stockpile or removing from site.
  - 3. Does Not Include Over-Excavation: Payment will not be made for over-excavated work nor for replacement materials.
- B. General Fill:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing soil, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, compacting, and dewatering.
- C. Structural Fill:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing soil, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, and compacting.
- D. Granular Fill:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, compacting, and dewatering.
- E. Aggregates:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, compacting, and dewatering.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finish Grade Elevations: Top of paving or proposed contours indicated on drawings.
- B. Subgrade Elevations: Bottom of paving section indicated on drawings.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AASHTO T 180 - Standard Specification for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54 kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457 mm (18 in.) Drop; 2010.

- B. ASTM C136/C136M - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates; 2014.
- C. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- D. ASTM D1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method; 2007.
- E. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (2,700 kN m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- F. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 2008.
- G. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2011.
- H. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.
- I. ASTM D4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils; 2010.
- J. TxDOT TEX-113-E - Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials; 2010.
- K. TxDOT TEX-114-E - Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade, Embankment Soils, and Backfill Material; 2005.
- L. NFPA 24 - Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and their appurtenances.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Samples: sample of each type of fill; submit each material sample in three 5-gallon air-tight containers to testing laboratory.
- B. Materials Sources: Submit name of imported materials source.
- C. Fill Composition Test Reports: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used.
- D. Compaction Density Test Reports.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.
- B. When fill materials need to be stored on site, locate stockpiles where designated.
  - 1. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile separately to prevent intermixing.
  - 2. Prevent contamination.
  - 3. Protect stockpiles from erosion and deterioration of materials.
  - 4. Provide positive drainage away from stockpiled material.
  - 5. Install erosion control measures around stockpiles as needed.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 FILL MATERIALS**

- A. General Fill: Subsoil excavated on-site or imported borrow.
  - 1. For imported borrow, gradation less than 15 percent passing No. 200 sieve as determined by ASTM D 1140.

2. For imported borrow, plasticity index less than 20 percent as determined by ASTM D 4318.
  3. No organic matter or debris.
  4. For subsoil excavated onsite, reference Geotechnical Engineering Report.
- B. Structural Fill:
1. Reference Geotechnical Engineering Report.
  2. If a Geotechnical Engineering Report is not available then comply with TxDOT Item 247 Type A Grade 2 Base.
  3. Graded in accordance with the following limits unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. 1-3/4 inch sieve: 90-100 percent passing.
    - b. No. 4 sieve: 25-55 percent passing.
    - c. No. 40 sieve: 15-40 percent passing.
  4. Mixture shall be crushed stone and contain no clay lumps or organic matter.
  5. Fraction passing No. 40 sieve shall have a liquid limit less than 40 and a plasticity index less than 12 as determined by ASTM D 4318.
- C. Concrete for Fill: As specified in Section 03 3000.10 - Controlled Low Strength Backfill.
- D. Granular Fill : Crushed limestone or pea gravel ; free of shale, clay, friable material and debris.
1. Graded in accordance with ASTM C136/C136M, within the following limits:
    - a. 1/2 inch sieve: 95 percent passing.
    - b. No. 4 sieve: 5 percent passing.
- E. Select Initial Backfill or Bedding Material: Clean, well graded crushed stone or gravels, crushed screenings or sand.
1. Modified Grade 5:
    - a. 1/2 inch sieve: 100 percent passing.
    - b. 3/8 inch sieve: 100 to 95 percent passing.
    - c. No. 4 sieve: 80 to 20 percent passing.
    - d. No. 10 sieve: less than 25 percent passing.
    - e. No. 20 sieve: less than 2 percent passing.
  2. Plasticity index 12 or less as determined by TxDOT Test Method TEX-106-E.

## **2.02 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Geotextile Fabric: Non-biodegradable.

## **2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Where fill materials are specified by reference to a specific standard, test and analyze samples for compliance before delivery to site.
- B. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.
- C. Provide materials of each type from same source throughout the Work.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the work are as indicated.
- B. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain and protect from damage.
- B. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities as indicated on plans.
- C. Protect bench marks, survey control points, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.
- D. Protect other features to remain.
- E. Grade top perimeter of trenching area to prevent surface water from draining into trench. Provide temporary means and methods, as required, to maintain surface water diversion until no longer needed, or as directed by the Engineer.

**3.03 TRENCHING**

- A. Notify Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
- B. Banks of excavations may be cut back on slopes to angle of repose or less until shored. Slope shall not extend lower than 12 inches above top of pipe.
- C. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
- D. Cut trenches wide enough to allow proper installation, jointing, embedment, and inspection of utilities. See drawing details for minimum trench width.
- E. Hand trim excavations. Remove loose matter.
- F. Remove large stones and other hard matter that could damage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.
- G. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cubic yard measured by volume. See Section 31 2316.26 for removal of larger material.
- H. Excavate pipe trenches six inches (6") below the underside of the pipe to provide for the installation of a granular fill pipe foundation material except where otherwise required.
- I. Where in earth, trench bottoms for pipe six inches (6") or smaller, may be graded to provide uniform and continuous support (between bell holes or end joints) of the installed pipe.
- J. Remove excavated material that is unsuitable for re-use from site.
- K. Stockpile excavated material to be re-used in area designated on site. Stockpile material a sufficient distance from the banks of the trench to avoid overloading and to prevent slides or cave-ins.
- L. Remove excess excavated material from site.
- M. Provide temporary means and methods, as required, to remove all water from trenching until directed by the Engineer. Remove and replace soils deemed unsuitable by classification and which are excessively moist due to lack of dewatering or surface water control.
- N. Determine the prevailing groundwater level prior to trenching. If the proposed trench extends less than 1 foot into the prevailing groundwater, control groundwater intrusion with perimeter drains routed to sump pumps, or as directed by the Engineer.

**3.04 PREPARATION FOR UTILITY PLACEMENT**

- A. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with properly compacted structural fill.
- B. Backfill over-depths in trench excavation with properly compacted structural fill.

- C. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
- D. Provide adequate clearance at bell holes for tools and methods used in installing pipe. No part of any bell or coupling shall be in contact with the trench bottom, trench walls, or granular embedment when the pipe is jointed.
- E. Where existing piping constructed by others cross the new pipeline trench excavation, the existing piping or ductbank shall be adequately supported and protected from damage due to construction. All methods for supporting and maintaining these facilities shall be subject to review by the Engineer or the Testing Laboratory. Backfill between utility crossings shall meet the requirements of standard backfill compact. See Section 03 3000.10 for low strength flowable fill option.
- F. Until ready to backfill, maintain excavations and prevent loose soil from falling into excavation. Prevent surface water from flowing into trenches. Any water accumulating in trenches shall be removed by pumping or other approved methods.
- G. If this project is within the Edwards Aquifer Recharge Zone, follow all requirements and recommendations of approved Water Pollution Abatement Plan (WPAP) and Sewer Collection System (SCS), including, plans, reports, and TCEQ approval letters. If, during construction, any recharge features are found, all activities near the feature must be suspended immediately and the Engineer must be notified. No activities near the feature may proceed until TCEQ has approved a plan to address the feature. If any sanitary sewer lines cross geologic fault lines, as indicated in the SCS plans and report, contact the Engineer 48 hours prior to excavating in the vicinity of the fault. The Engineer's geologist is required to assess such faults during excavation.

### 3.05 BACKFILLING

- A. See Section 31 2323 for general backfill requirements.
- B. Backfill is divided into three (3) separate zones:
  - 1. Bedding: The material in trench bottom in direct contact with the bottom of the pipe.
  - 2. Initial backfill: The backfill zone extending from the surface of the bedding to a point one foot (1') above the top of the pipe.
  - 3. Secondary backfill: The backfill zone extending from the initial backfill surface to the top of the trench. Placement of materials for each of the zones is described herein.
- C. Bedding
  - 1. When unacceptable materials such as water, silt, muck, trash or debris, or rock boulder or coarse gravel (particle size greater than 1 ¾ inch) exist at the bearing level or for pipes with a nominal inner diameter greater than six inches (6"), use a bedding of granular embedment material.
  - 2. Unstable materials shall be removed at the direction of the Engineer and replaced to a minimum depth of four inches (4") or one-eighth (1/8) of the outside diameter of the pipe, whichever is greater, with granular embedment material. Extend this material up to the sides of the pipe sufficiently to embed the lower quadrant of the pipe. If stability is not accomplished by using the above procedure, the Engineer may require additional granular embedment.
  - 3. Spread and grade granular embedment to provide a uniform and continuous bedding zone beneath the pipe at all points between bell holes or pipe joints. It will be permissible to slightly disturb the finished subgrade surface to withdraw pipe slings or

- other lifting tackle. After each pipe has been graded, aligned, and shoved home, deposit and compact sufficient pipe embedment material under and around each side of the pipe and back of the bell or end thereof to hold the pipe in proper position and alignment during subsequent pipe jointing and embedment operations. Deposit and compact embedment material uniformly and simultaneously on each side of the pipe to prevent lateral displacement.
4. Compact each layer of embedment material by at least two complete coverages of all portions of the surface of each lift using adequate compaction equipment. One coverage is defined as the conditions reached when all portions of the lift fill have been subjected to the direct contact of the compacting surface of the compactor.
  5. The method of compaction and the equipment used shall be appropriate for the material to be compacted and shall not transmit damaging shocks to the pipe.
- D. Initial Backfill: Initial backfill is defined as backfill having a thickness in its compacted state from the surface of the bedding to a point one foot (1') above the top of the pipe. Initial backfill shall be constructed in accordance with details shown on the plans and these specifications.
1. Select Initial Backfill: Where pipe is to be laid in a rock cut or where rock in boulder ledge or coarse gravel (particle size larger than 1¾ inch) formations exist in the initial backfill zone, or where trench walls or conditions are unstable or where the pipe to be laid is flexible pipe, use granular embedment for initial backfill.
  2. For conduits less than twenty-four inches (24") in diameter select initial backfill material shall be placed in two (2) lifts. The first lift shall be spread uniformly and simultaneously on each side and under the shoulders of the pipe to the mid-point or spring line of the pipe. The first lift of select initial backfill shall be inspected and approved prior to placement of the second lift. The second lift of select initial backfill material shall extend from the spring line of the pipe to a depth sufficient to produce a compacted depth of material a minimum of one foot (1') above the top of the pipe. The second lift shall be evenly spread in a similar manner as the first lift.
  3. For conduits twenty-four (24") in diameter and larger, select initial backfill material shall be evenly and simultaneously spread alongside, under the shoulders or haunches of the pipe and over the pipe in six-inch (6") lifts to a point sufficient to produce a compacted depth of material a minimum of one foot (1') above the top of the pipe.
  4. Natural Initial Backfill: Where the pipe to be laid is rigid pipe and where stable materials and laying conditions exist at the pipe bearing level and initial backfill zone and existing excavated materials are acceptable to the Engineer, such excavated natural materials may be utilized as initial backfill material.
  5. For dedicated water lines used for fire protection and trenched in rock, tamped initial backfill and bedding material shall be used for at least 6 inches under and around the pipe and for at least 2 feet above the pipe.
- E. Secondary Backfill: Secondary backfill is defined as backfill from one foot (1') above the top of the pipe of the trench. Secondary backfill shall be constructed in accordance with details shown on the plans and these specifications.
1. Secondary backfill shall generally consist of materials removed from the trench and shall be free of trash brush and other debris. No rock or stones having any dimension larger than one half of the trench width, or four inches (4"), whichever is less, shall be used in the secondary backfilling zone. In special cases where excessive width and/or depth of the trench permit, and only with approval of the Engineer, larger rocks up to six inches



(6") in diameter may be incorporated into the backfill provided that the surrounding compactable soil may be properly and adequately compacted.

- F. Restore the surface of the backfilled trench, if not disturbed by surrounding construction, to match previous existing conditions.
- G. Compaction Density unless otherwise indicated in the project Geotechnical Report:
  - 1. Compaction to meet the requirements of TxDOT TEX-114-E.
  - 2. Lift Thickness: 8 inches.
  - 3. Moisture Content: Between optimum and optimum +4 percent.
  - 4. Testing laboratory will perform density tests at completion of each lift.
  - 5. If the tests indicate unsatisfactory compaction, the Contractor shall provide the additional compaction necessary to obtain the specified degree of compaction. All additional compaction work shall be performed by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner until the specified compaction is obtained. This work shall include complete removal of unacceptable (as determined by the Testing Laboratory) fill areas and replacement and recompaction until acceptable fill is provided.

### **3.06 BEDDING AND FILL AT SPECIFIC LOCATIONS**

- A. Use general fill unless otherwise specified or indicated.

### **3.07 TOLERANCES**

- A. Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

### **3.08 CLEANING**

- A. Leave unused materials in a neat, compact stockpile.
- B. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.
- C. Leave borrow areas in a clean and neat condition. Grade to prevent standing surface water.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 2316.14****TRENCH EXCAVATION PROTECTION****PART I - GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES:**

- A. Trench Excavation Protection required for the construction of all trench excavation protection systems to be utilized in the project and including all additional excavation and backfill necessitated by the protection and backfill necessitated by the protection system.

**1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

- A. Trench Excavation Protection is to be included in the cost of installation of trenched underground utilities.

**1.03 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Trench Excavation Protection shall be accomplished as required by the provisions of Part 1926, Subpart P - Excavations, Trenching, and Shoring of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration Standards and Interpretations.
- B. A copy of the Document is available for review at the office of the Engineer. It shall be construed that this document is included in this Project Manual and shall apply to every Section as if written in full therein.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS -- NOT USED****PART 3 - EXECUTION****3.01 CONSTRUCTION METHODS**

- A. Trench Excavation Protection shall be accomplished as required by the provisions of, Part 1926, Subpart P - Excavations, Trenching, and Shoring of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration Standards and Interpretations.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 2316.26****ROCK REMOVAL****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Removal of rock during excavation.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 01 5713 - Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control.
- B. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.
- D. Section 31 2316.14 - Trench Excavation Protection.
- E. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- F. Project Geotechnical Report.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Rock Removal: By the cubic yard measured before removal. Includes preparation of rock for removal, mechanical disintegration of rock, removal from position, loading and removing from site. For over excavation, payment will not be made for over excavated work nor for replacement materials.
- B. Trench Rock Removal: By the cubic yard measured before removal. Includes preparation of rock for removal, mechanical disintegration of rock, removal from position, loading and removing from site. For over excavation, payment will not be made for over excavated work nor for replacement materials.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Rock: Solid mineral material of a size that cannot be removed with a 3/4 cubic yard capacity loader bucket.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS -- NOT USED****PART 2 PRODUCTS -- NOT USED****PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify site conditions and note subsurface irregularities affecting work of this section.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.

**3.03 USE OF EXPLOSIVES -- NOT USED****3.04 ROCK REMOVAL**

- A. Excavate and remove rock by mechanical methods only; use of explosives is prohibited.
- B. Form level bearing at bottom of excavations.
- C. Remove shaled layers to provide sound and unshattered base for footings or site structures.
- D. Correct unauthorized rock removal to directions of Engineer.
- E. Vertical rock faces assumed to be competent rock as indicated on drawings shall be excavated by milling machine or rock saw. "Hoe ramming" or "ripping" will not be allowed. Unstable

vertical rock faces caused by improper rock excavation methods shall be stabilized using structural retaining materials acceptable to Owner and Engineer at no additional charge to Owner.

- F. Coordinate with Owner and Engineer for stockpiling of boulders larger than 3 feet for landscape features.
- G. If onsite excavated material is to be used as onsite fill, refer to Geotechnical Report and Section 31 2323 - Fill for requirements.
- H. Control noise and dust from on-site rock crushing and screening operations. Comply with all applicable regulations.
- I. Onsite rock crushing facilities are subject to all Local, State, and Federal codes and permits. The contractor shall obtain all necessary permits for rock crushing facilities at no additional expense to the owner.
- J. If excavation encounters a geologic feature, reference Section 02 5100.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 2323****FILL****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Filling, backfilling, and compacting for building volume below grade, footings, slabs-on-grade, paving, and utilities within the building.
- B. Filling holes, pits, and excavations.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- B. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.
- D. Project Geotechnical Report.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. General Fill:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing soil, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, compacting, and dewatering.
- B. Structural Fill:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing soil, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, compacting, and dewatering.
- C. Granular Fill:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, compacting, and dewatering.
- D. Aggregates:
  - 1. Measurement Method: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Includes: Excavating existing material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, compacting, and dewatering.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finish Grade Elevations: Indicated on drawings.
- B. Subgrade Elevations: Indicated on drawings.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AASHTO T 180 - Standard Specification for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54 kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457 mm (18 in.) Drop; 2010.
- B. ASTM C136/C136M - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates; 2014.
- C. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- D. ASTM D1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method; 2007.

- E. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (2,700 kN m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- F. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 2008.
- G. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2011.
- H. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.
- I. ASTM D4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils; 2010.
- J. TxDOT TEX-113-E, Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials, using 5.5 lb rammer and 12-inch drop.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Samples: sample of each type of fill; submit each material sample in three 5-gallon air-tight containers to testing laboratory.
- B. Materials Sources: Submit name of imported materials source.
- C. Fill Composition Test Reports: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used, including manufactured fill.
- D. Compaction Density Test Reports.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.
- B. When fill materials need to be stored on site, locate stockpiles where designated.
  - 1. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile separately to prevent intermixing.
  - 2. Prevent contamination.
  - 3. Protect stockpiles from erosion and deterioration of materials.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 FILL MATERIALS**

- A. General Fill: Subsoil excavated onsite, imported borrow.
  - 1. For imported borrow, gradation less than 15 percent passing No. 200 sieve as determined by ASTM D 1140.
  - 2. For imported borrow, plasticity index less than 20 percent as determined by ASTM D 4318.
  - 3. No vegetative matter or debris.
  - 4. No rocks larger than half of the lift thickness.
- B. Structural Fill:
  - 1. Refer to Geotechnical Engineering Report.
  - 2. If a Geotechnical Engineering Report is not available then comply with TxDOT Item 247 Type A Grade 2 Base.
  - 3. Graded in accordance with the following limits unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. 1-3/4 inch sieve: 90-100 percent passing.
    - b. No. 4 sieve: 25-55 percent passing.
    - c. No. 40 sieve: 15-40 percent passing.

4. Mixture shall be crushed stone and contain no clay lumps or organic matter.
  5. Fraction passing No. 40 sieve shall have a liquid limit less than 40 and a plasticity index less than 12 as determined by ASTM D 4318.
- C. Granular Fill : Crushed limestone or pea gravel ; free of shale, clay, friable material and debris.
1. Graded in accordance with ASTM C136/C136M, within the following limits:
    - a. 1/2 inch sieve: 95 percent passing.
    - b. No. 4 sieve: 5 percent passing.
- D. Sand: Natural river or bank sand; free of silt, clay, loam, friable or soluble materials, and organic matter.
1. Graded in accordance with ASTM C136/C136M; within the following limits:
    - a. No. 4 sieve: 100 percent passing.
    - b. No. 200 sieve: 0 to 10 percent passing.
- E. Drain Gravel: Washed gravel.
1. Material shall have an LA abrasion number of 35 or less.
  2. Graded within the following limits:
    - a. 2 inch sieve: 100 percent passing.
    - b. 1-1/2 inch sieve: 90-100 percent passing.
    - c. 1 inch sieve: 25-55 percent passing.
    - d. 1/2 inch sieve: 0-10 percent passing.
    - e. 1/4 inch sieve: 0-5 percent passing.
- F. Topsoil: See Section 31 2200.

## **2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Where fill materials are specified by reference to a specific standard, test and analyze samples for compliance before delivery to site.
- B. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.
- C. Provide materials of each type from same source throughout the Work.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.
- B. Verify that existing topography is as shown in the plans. Coordinate with the engineer for any discrepancies prior to start of excavation.
- C. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum locations.
- D. See Section 31 2200 for additional requirements.
- E. Verify subdrainage, dampproofing, or waterproofing installation has been inspected.
- F. Verify structural ability of unsupported walls to support imposed loads by the fill.
- G. Verify areas to be filled are not compromised with surface or ground water.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Scarify and proof roll subgrade surface to a depth of 6 inches to identify soft spots.
- B. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of compaction in place. Backfill with general fill.

- C. Compact subgrade to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
- D. Until ready to fill, maintain excavations and prevent loose soil from falling into excavation.
- E. Record locations of underground utilities.
- F. If required, remove concrete formwork.
- G. Remove trash and debris.

### 3.03 FILLING

- A. Fill to contours and elevations indicated using suitable materials.
- B. All select backfill, backfill and fill required for structures and trenches and required to provide the finished grades shown and as described herein shall be furnished, placed and compacted by the Contractor.
- C. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.
- D. Systematically fill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not fill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- E. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- F. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 percent, unless noted otherwise. Make gradual grade changes. Blend slope to transition at grade changes.
- G. Correct areas that are over-excavated.
- H. All material shall be placed in horizontal loose lifts not exceeding eight inches (8") in thickness and shall be mixed and spread in a manner assuring uniform lift thickness after placing. Each lift shall be compacted by not less than two complete coverages of the specified compactor. Select backfill shall be placed to the underside of all concrete slabs or paved areas. The fill material shall extend a minimum of five feet (5') outside the face of each structure and be twelve inches (12") below finished grade. The maximum slope of select backfill to the subgrade shall be one vertical to one and one half horizontal.
- I. Backfill around and outside of structures and over select backfill shall be deposited in layers not to exceed eight inches (8") in uncompacted thickness and mechanically compacted, using platform type tampers. Compaction of structural backfill, by rolling will be permitted provided the desired compaction is obtained and damage to the structure is prevented. Compaction of select backfill and/or backfill by inundation with water will not be permitted. All materials shall be deposited as specified herein and as shown on the drawings.
- J. Unless otherwise indicated in the Geotechnical Report, all material shall be placed at a moisture content that falls in the range of laboratory optimum moisture content and laboratory optimum +4%. It shall be compacted to a density of 95 percent (95%) of the maximum laboratory dry density for that material as determined by TxDOT TEX-113-E. The Contractor shall provide equipment capable of adding measured amounts of water to the material to bring it to a condition within the range of the required moisture content. The Contractor shall provide equipment capable of discing, aerating, and mixing the soil to insure reasonable uniformity of moisture content throughout the material and to reduce the moisture content of the material by air drying if necessary. If the subgrade material must be moisture conditioned before compaction, the material shall be sufficiently mixed or worked on the subgrade to insure a uniform moisture content throughout the lift of material to be



compacted. Materials at moisture content in excess of the specified limit shall be dried by aeration or stockpiled for drying.

- K. No material shall be placed when free water is standing on the surface of the area where the material is to be placed. No compaction of material will be permitted with free water on any portion of the material to be compacted. No material shall be placed or compacted in a frozen condition or on top of frozen material. Any material containing organic materials or other unacceptable material previously described shall be removed and replaced with acceptable material prior to compaction.
- L. Each lift of compacted material shall be compacted by the designated number of coverages of all portions of the surface of each lift by a smooth drum vibratory roller for granular material having a static weight not less than 5,500 pounds, a sheepsfoot roller for cohesive material exerting a pressure of 250 psi on the surface of the feet, or equivalent equipment, prior to commencement of the work. One coverage is defined as the condition obtained when all portions of the surface of the backfill material have been subjected to the direct contact of the compactor. The compactor shall be operated at a forward speed not exceeding 40 feet per minute.
- M. Compaction shall be performed with equipment suitable for the type of material being placed. The contractor shall select equipment which is capable of providing the minimum density required by these Specifications. The gross weight of compacting equipment shall not exceed 7,000 pounds within a distance of ten feet (10') from the wall of any existing structure or completed structure under this contract. Equipment shall be provided that is capable of compacting in restricted areas next to structures and around piping. The effectiveness of the equipment selected by the Contractor shall be tested at the commencement of compacted material work by construction of a small section of material within the area where material is to be placed. If tests on this section of backfill show that the specified compaction is not obtained, the Contractor shall increase the amount of coverages, decrease the lift thicknesses or obtain a different type of compactor.
- N. Particular care shall be taken to compact structure backfill which will be beneath pipes, roads, or other surface construction or structures. In addition, wherever a trench passes through structure backfill, the structure backfill shall be placed and compacted to an elevation twelve inches (12") above the top of the pipe before the trench is excavated. Compacted areas, in each case, shall be adequate to support the item to be constructed or placed thereon.
- O. The compaction requirements specified are predicated on the use of normal materials and compaction equipment. In order to establish criteria for the placement of a controlled fill so that it will have compressibility and strength characteristics compatible with the proposed structural loadings, a series of laboratory compaction and/or compressive strength tests will be performed on the samples of materials submitted by the Contractor. From the results of the laboratory tests, the final values of the required percent compaction, the allowable compaction moisture content range, and the maximum permissible lift thickness will be established for the fill material and construction equipment proposed.
- P. Compaction Density, unless otherwise specified or indicated:
  - 1. Standard: TxDOT TEX-113-E.
  - 2. Required Density: 95 percent of the maximum dry density.
  - 3. Lift Thickness: 8 inches.
  - 4. Moisture Content: Between optimum and optimum +4 percent.
  - 5. Testing laboratory will perform density tests at completion of each lift.

6. If the tests indicate unsatisfactory compaction, the Contractor shall provide the additional compaction necessary to obtain the specified degree of compaction. All additional compaction work shall be performed by the Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner until the specified compaction is obtained. This work shall include complete removal of unacceptable (as determined by the Testing Laboratory) fill areas and replacement and recompaction until acceptable fill is provided.
  7. Pit Run Sand Placement: Pit run sand shall be placed and compacted to the limits shown on the drawings.
  8. Drainage Gravel: Drain gravel shall be compacted in maximum 8-inch lifts with a minimum of two passes of a hand operated vibratory plate compactor weighing between 150 and 500 pounds.
- Q. Reshape and re-compact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.
- R. Maintain temporary means and methods, as required, to remove all water while fill is being placed as required, or until directed by the Engineer. Remove and replace soils deemed unsuitable by classification and which are excessively moist due to lack of dewatering or surface water control.

**3.04 FILL AT SPECIFIC LOCATIONS****3.05 TOLERANCES**

- A. Top Surface of General Filling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

**3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Refer to the Geotechnical Engineer for general requirements for field inspections and testing.

**3.07 CLEANING**

- A. See Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.
- B. Leave unused materials in a neat, compact stockpile.
- C. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.
- D. Leave borrow areas in a clean and neat condition. Grade to prevent standing surface water.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 31 3213.19**  
**LIME SOIL STABILIZATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Excavating, treatment, and placement of lime treated subsoil mix.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- B. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- C. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Measurement Method: Lime: By the ton (2000 lbs) of the type specified.
- B. Measurement Method: Lime Treatment: By the square yard of lime/subsoil mix. Includes supplying ingredient materials, scarifying substrate surface, mixing and placing where required, compacting and curing.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AASHTO M 216 - Standard Specification for Lime for Soil Stabilization; 2005.
- B. ASTM C977 - Standard Specification for Quicklime and Hydrated Lime for Soil Stabilization; 2010.
- C. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- D. ASTM D1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method; 2007.
- E. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (2,700 kN m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- F. NLA Bull 326 - Lime-Treated Soil Construction Manual: Lime Stabilization & Lime Modification; 2004, 11th Edition.
- G. Project Geotechnical Report.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Submit mix design and materials mix ratio that will achieve specified requirements.
- B. Samples: Submit 10 lb sample of each type of fill in air-tight containers, to testing laboratory.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with NLA Bull 326.
- B. Maintain one copy on site.

**1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install mixed materials in wind in excess of 10 mph or when temperature is below 40 degrees F.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MIX MATERIALS**

- A. Subsoil: Existing reused.
- B. Type A, Hydrated Lime.
- C. Type B, Commercial Lime Slurry.
  - 1. Lime: TxDOT DMS-6350 "Lime and Lime Slurry."
  - 2. Mix Design: The Engineer will determine the target lime content and optimum moisture content in accordance with TxDOT Tex-121-E.
- D. Type C, Quicklime.
- E. The Contractor shall select, prior to construction, the grade to be used and shall notify the Engineer in writing before changing from one grade to another. Lime shall be placed in slurry form only, unless written permission is granted by the Engineer and a safety and containment plan is submitted to the Engineer by the Contractor seven days prior to use. In circumstances where it would be beneficial to utilize lime for "drying" subgrade materials to expedite construction, the Contractor may request approval from the Engineer to use pelletized lime.

**2.02 EQUIPMENT**

- A. Equipment: Capable of excavating subsoil, mixing and placing materials, wetting, consolidation, and compaction of material.

**2.03 LIME/SOIL MIX**

- A. Mix materials in accordance with Texas Department of Transportation Item No. 260, Lime Treatment-Road Mixed.
- B. Carefully add water to the mix to achieve a consistent mixture without lumping yet not create a wet plastic consistency.
- C. Obtain approval of the mix before proceeding with placement.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not place fill over frozen, wet or soft subgrade surfaces.

**3.02 EXCAVATION**

- A. Protect adjacent structures from damage by this work.
- B. Excavate subsoil to depth and configuration as indicated in the drawings. Minimum depth is 6 inches.
- C. Proof roll subgrade to identify soft areas; excavate those areas.
- D. Do not excavate within normal 45 degree bearing splay of any foundation.
- E. Notify Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions. Discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
- F. Correct areas over-excavated in accordance with Section 31 2316.
- G. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on site; remove excess material not being reused from site.

- H. In lieu of using the cutting and pulverizing machine, the Contractor may excavate and windrow the material to expose the secondary grade to the typical sections, lines and grades as shown on the plans or as established by the Engineer.
- I. Pulverization: The existing pavement or base material shall be pulverized or scarified so that 100 percent shall pass the 2-1/2 inch sieve.

### 3.03 SOIL TREATMENT AND BACKFILLING

- A. Application: The percentage by weight or pounds per square yard of lime to be added will be as shown on the plans and may be varied by the Engineer if conditions warrant.
  - 1. Lime shall be spread only on that area where the mixing operations can be completed during the same working day.
  - 2. Unless otherwise approved by the Engineer, the lime operation shall not be started when the air temperature is below 40 degrees F. Lime shall not be placed when weather conditions in the opinion of the Engineer are unsuitable.
- B. Slurry Placing: When Type A Hydrated Lime is specified and slurry placement is to be used, the Type A Hydrated Lime shall be mixed with water to form a slurry with a solids content approved by the Engineer.
  - 1. Type B Commercial Lime Slurry:
    - a. Deliver to the project in slurry form at or above the minimum dry solids content approved by the Engineer.
    - b. The distribution of lime at the rate(s) shown on the plans or approved by the Engineer shall be attained by successive passes over a measured section of roadway until the proper lime content has been secured.
  - 2. Type C Quicklime:
    - a. Apply as slurry, the amount of dry quicklime shall be 80 percent of the amount shown on the plans.
    - b. The slurry shall contain at least the minimum dry solids content approved by the Engineer.
    - c. The residue from the slurring procedure shall be spread uniformly over the length of the roadway currently being processed unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.
  - 3. Slurry shall be of such consistency that it can be applied uniformly without difficulty.
  - 4. When the distributor truck is not equipped with an agitator, the Contractor shall have a standby pump available on the project for agitating the lime and water as required by the Engineer in case of undue delays in dispersing the slurry.
- C. Dry Placing: Dry placing is not allowed unless approved by the Engineer in writing.
  - 1. The lime shall be distributed by an approved spreader at the rate shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer.
  - 2. The lime shall be distributed at a uniform rate and in such a manner as to reduce the scattering of lime by the wind.
  - 3. The material shall be sprinkled as approved by the Inspector.
- D. Mixing: The mixing procedure shall be the same for "Slurry Placing" or "Dry Placing" as herein described.
  - 1. Begin Mixing within 6 hours of lime application. During the interval between application and mixing, hydrated lime that has been exposed to the open air for a period of six (6)

hours or more or to excessive loss due to washing or blowing will not be accepted for payment.

- a. Initial Mixing: The material and lime shall be thoroughly mixed. The material and lime shall be brought to the proper moisture content and left to mellow for 1 to 4 days. When pebble grade quicklime is used, allow the mixture to mellow for 2 to 4 days as approved by the Engineer.
  - 1) If Type C Quicklime, Grade "DS," is approved for use by the Engineer under "Dry Placing," the material and lime shall be mixed as thoroughly as possible at the time of the lime application. Sufficient moisture shall be added during the mixing to hydrate the quicklime.
  - 2) During the mellowing period, the material shall be kept moist as directed by the Inspector.
  - 3) When shown on the plans or approved by the Engineer, the pulverization requirement may be waived when the material contains a substantial quantity of aggregate.
2. Final Mixing: After the required mellowing time, the material shall be uniformly mixed by approved methods. If the soil binder-lime mixture contains clods, they shall be reduced in size by the use of approved pulverization methods.
  - a. Following mixing, a sample of the material at roadway moisture will be obtained for pulverization testing. All non-slaking aggregates retained on the 3/4 inch sieve will be removed from the sample. The remainder of the material shall meet the following pulverization requirement when tested by TxDOT Test Method Tex-101-E, Part III:

1) Minimum passing 1-3/4 " sieve	100
2) Minimum passing 3/4" sieve	85
3) Minimum passing No. 4 sieve	60
- E. Compaction: Prior to compaction, the material shall be aerated or sprinkled as necessary to provide the optimum moisture. Compaction of the mixture shall begin immediately after final mixing and in no case more than 24 hours after final mixing
  1. Compaction shall continue until the entire depth of the mixture is uniformly compacted. Throughout this entire operation, the shape of the course shall be maintained by blading, and the surface upon completion shall be smooth and in conformity with the typical sections, lines and grades as shown on the plans or as established by the Engineer.
    - a. Ordinary Compaction: Roll with approved compaction equipment, as directed. Correct irregularities, depressions, and weak spots immediately by scarifying the areas affected, adding or removing treated material as required, reshaping, and recompact.
    - b. Density Control: Each course shall be sprinkled as required and compacted to the extent necessary to provide not less than 95 percent of the optimum density. Unless otherwise shown on the plans, the Engineer will determine roadway density of completed sections in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-115-E. The Engineer may accept the section if no more than 1 of the 5 most recent density tests is below the specified density and the failing test is no more than 3 pcf below the specified density.

2. When the material fails to meet the density requirements, or should the material lose the required stability, density or finish before the next course is placed, or the project is accepted, it shall be reworked as specified below.
- F. Reworking a Section:
1. When a section is reworked within 72 hours after completion of compaction, the Contractor shall rework the section to provide the required compaction.
  2. When a section is reworked more than 72 hours after completion of compaction, the Contractor shall add 25 percent of the specified rate of lime.
  3. Reworking shall include loosening, road mixing as approved by the Engineer, compacting, and finishing.
  4. When a section is reworked, a new optimum density will be determined from the reworked material in accordance with TXDOT Test Method Tex-121-E, Part II and shall compact in-place to a minimum of 95 percent of this density.
  5. Do not surface patch.
- G. Finishing:
1. Site mix subsoil, backfill and compact. Blend treated subsoil mix to achieve mix formulation and required stabilization.
  2. Place mix material in continuous layers not exceeding 12 inches depth unless otherwise indicated in drawings. Maintain optimum moisture content of mix materials to attain required stabilization.
  3. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 inches in 10 ft, unless noted otherwise.
  4. Shape to required line, grade, and cross section.
  5. Make grade changes gradual. Blend slope into level areas.
  6. Immediately after completing compaction, clip, skin, or tight-blade the surface of the lime treated material with a maintainer or subgrade trimmer to a depth of approximately 1/4-inch.
  7. Remove loosened material and dispose of it at an approved location.
  8. Roll the clipped surface immediately with a pneumatic-tire roller until a smooth surface is attained.
  9. Add small increments of water as needed during rolling.
  10. Shape and maintain the course and surface in conformity with the typical sections, lines and grades shown on the plans or as directed.
  11. At end of day, terminate completed Work by forming a straight and vertical construction joint.
  12. Replace damaged fill with new mix to full depth of original mix.
  13. Remove surplus mix materials from site.

### 3.04 CURING

- A. After the final layer or course of the lime treated material has been compacted, it shall be brought to the required lines and grades in accordance with the typical sections.
- B. The completed section shall then be finished by rolling with a pneumatic tire or other suitable roller.
1. The completed section shall be moist cured or prevented from drying by addition of an asphalt material at the rate of 0.05 to 0.20 gallons per square yard.
  2. Curing shall continue for 2 to 5 days before further courses are added or traffic is permitted, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

- C. The lime treated material may be covered by other courses, the day following finishing, when approved by the Engineer. When the plans provide for the treated material to be covered by other courses of material, the next course shall be applied within 14 calendar days after final compaction is completed, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

**3.05 TOLERANCES**

- A. Top Surface of Fill: Plus or minus 0.1 inch from required elevations.

**3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Compression test and analysis of hardened fill material will be performed in accordance with ASTM D 698.
- B. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest.
- C. Frequency of Tests: As determined by construction materials testing firm.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 31 3700****RIPRAP****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Riprap rock.
- B. Cement sacks.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2323 - Fill.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Riprap: By the square yard of riprap area; summing the areas of individual layers, of riprap sacks. Includes supply and placing riprap mix in sacks, moist cured.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with Texas Department of Transportation.
- B. Maintain one copy of each document on site.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Riprap: Provide in accordance with State of Texas Highways standards standards.
- B. Riprap: Limestone type; broken stone or irregular shaped rock; solid and nonfriable; 4 inch minimum size, 12 inch maximum size, or as indicated on drawings.
- C. Aggregate: Granular fill, see Section 31 2323.
- D. Bags: Woven jute or geotextile fabric.
- E. Binder: Portland cement.
- F. Geotextile: Non-biodegradable, woven.

**2.02 BAGGED RIPRAP**

- A. Mix riprap, cement, sand and aggregate dry. Limit quantity of cement to 10 percent of dry mixed materials by volume.
- B. Fill bags with dry ingredients to 70 percent capacity and close by sewing or stapling to a straight seam.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not place riprap over frozen, wet or soft subgrade surfaces.

**3.02 PLACEMENT**

- A. Place geotextile over substrate, lap edges and ends.
- B. Place riprap at culvert pipe ends, embankment slopes, or as indicated on drawings.
- C. Place bags into position. Knead, ram, or pack filled bags to fit with the contour of adjacent material and other bags previously placed.
- D. Place bags in a staggered pattern. Remove foreign matter from bag surfaces.
- E. After placement, spray with water to moisten the bagged mix. Maintain moist for 24 hours.

- F. Installed Thickness: As indicated on drawings.
- G. Place rock into position in an interlocking manner to preclude disturbance or displacement of substrate.
- H. Place rock at location and depth indicated on drawings.

**3.03 SCHEDULES**

- A. Culvert Pipe Ends: Bagged, placed one layer thick, 6 inch average thickness, concealed with topsoil fill.
- B. Sloped Grade At Retaining Wall: Individual riprap units, 6 inch thickness; placed prior to finish topsoil.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 1123**  
**AGGREGATE BASE COURSES**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Aggregate base course.
- B. Paving aggregates.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- B. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- C. Section 32 1250 - Site Pavement.
- D. Project Geotechnical Report.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Coarse Aggregate: By the cubic yard. Includes supplying aggregate material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing, and compacting.
- B. Fine Aggregate: By the cubic yard. Includes supplying aggregate material, stockpiling, scarifying substrate surface, placing where required, and compacting.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AASHTO M 147 - Standard Specification for Materials for Aggregate and Soil-Aggregate Subbase, Base and Surface Courses; 1965 (2004).
- B. AASHTO T 180 - Standard Specification for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils Using a 4.54 kg (10-lb) Rammer and a 457 mm (18 in.) Drop; 2010.
- C. ASTM C136/C136M - Standard Test Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates; 2014.
- D. ASTM D698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (600 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- E. ASTM D1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method; 2007.
- F. ASTM D1557 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft<sup>3</sup> (2,700 kN m/m<sup>3</sup>)); 2012.
- G. ASTM D2167 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Rubber Balloon Method; 2008.
- H. ASTM D2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System); 2011.
- I. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2005.
- J. ASTM D4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils; 2010.
- K. ASTM D6938 - Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and Water Content of Soil and Soil-Aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth); 2010.

- L. TxDOT TEX-113-E - Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Samples: 10 lb sample of each type of aggregate; submit in air-tight containers to testing laboratory.
- B. Materials Sources: Submit name of imported materials source.
- C. Aggregate Composition Test Reports: Results of laboratory tests on proposed and actual materials used.
- D. Compaction Density Test Reports.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. When necessary, store materials on site in advance of need.
- B. Aggregate Storage, General:
  - 1. Separate differing materials with dividers or stockpile separately to prevent intermixing.
  - 2. Prevent contamination.
  - 3. Protect stockpiles from erosion and deterioration of materials.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Limestone, coarse, crushed rock meeting the requirements of 2004 TxDOT Item 247, Type A, Grade 1 or 2.

#### **2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Where aggregate materials are specified using ASTM D2487 classification, test and analyze samples for compliance before delivery to site.
- B. If tests indicate materials do not meet specified requirements, change material and retest.
- C. Provide materials of each type from same source throughout the Work.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the work are as indicated.
- B. Verify substrate has been inspected, gradients and elevations are correct, and is dry.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Correct irregularities in substrate gradient and elevation by scarifying, reshaping, and re-compacting.
- B. Do not place aggregate on soft, muddy, or frozen surfaces.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Spread aggregate over prepared substrate to a total compacted minimum thickness of 6 inches or as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Under Bituminous Concrete Paving:
  - 1. Place coarse aggregate to a total compacted minimum thickness of 6 inches or as indicated on the drawings.

2. Compact to 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D 1557 at a moisture content ranging from -2 to +3 percent of the optimum moisture content unless otherwise indicated on the geotechnical report.
- C. Under Portland Cement Concrete Paving:
  1. Place coarse aggregate to a total compacted minimum thickness of 6 inches or as indicated on the drawings.
  2. Compact to 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D 1557 at a moisture content ranging from -2 to +3 percent of the optimum moisture content unless otherwise indicated on the geotechnical report.
- D. Roller compact to specified density.
- E. Level and contour surfaces to elevations and gradients indicated.
- F. Add small quantities of fine aggregate to coarse aggregate as appropriate to assist compaction.
- G. Add water to assist compaction. If excess water is apparent, remove aggregate and aerate to reduce moisture content.
- H. Use mechanical tamping equipment in areas inaccessible to compaction equipment.

#### **3.04 TOLERANCES**

- A. Flatness: Maximum variation of 1/4 inch measured with 10 foot straight edge.
- B. Scheduled Compacted Thickness: Within 1/4 inch.
- C. Variation From Design Elevation: Within 1/4 inch.

#### **3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Compaction density testing will be performed on compacted aggregate base course in accordance with ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, or ASTM D6938.
- B. Results will be evaluated in relation to compaction curve determined by testing uncompacted material in accordance with AASHTO T 180, ASTM D698 ("standard Proctor"), or ASTM D1557 ("modified Proctor").
- C. If tests indicate work does not meet specified requirements, remove work, replace and retest.
- D. Frequency of Tests: To be determined by the Owner's Construction Materials Testing Contractors.
- E. Proof roll compacted aggregate at surfaces that will be under slabs-on-grade, pavers, and paving.

#### **3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Remove unused stockpiled materials, leave area in a clean and neat condition. Grade stockpile area to prevent standing surface water.
- B. Leave borrow areas in a clean and neat condition. Grade to prevent standing surface water.

#### **END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 1250****SITE PAVEMENT****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 DESCRIPTION**

- A. Scope
  - 1. Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required to provide hot mix-hot laid bituminous paving, as shown and specified for roadways.
  - 2. The work includes the following:
    - a. Lime Stabilized Subbase
    - b. Flexible Base
    - c. Cement Stabilized Base
    - d. Asphalt Stabilized Base
    - e. Surface Treatments
    - f. Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete
    - g. Portland Cement Concrete Pavement
    - h. Testing As Specified

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- B. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 2323 – Fill.
- D. Section 32 1123 – Aggregate Base Course.

**1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Testing Services
  - 1. General: Testing of materials and of compaction requirements for compliance with technical requirements of the Specifications shall be the duty of a testing laboratory as provided for by the specifications for this Project.
  - 2. Testing Services:
    - a. The testing laboratory shall:
      - 1) Test the Contractor's proposed materials in the laboratory and field for compliance with the Specifications.
      - 2) Perform field density tests to assure that the specified compaction of surface and base course materials has been obtained.
      - 3) Report all test results to the Engineer and the Contractor.
      - 4) Perform concrete testing in accordance with the Project specifications.
  - 3. Authority and Duties of Testing Laboratory:
    - a. Technicians representing the testing laboratory shall inspect the materials in the field and perform compaction tests, and shall report their findings to the Engineer and the Contractor. When the materials furnished or work performed by the Contractor fails to fulfill Specifications requirements, the technician will direct the attention of the Engineer and the Contractor to such failure.
    - b. The technician shall not act as foreman or perform other duties for the Contractor. Work will be checked as it progresses, but failure to detect any defective work or materials shall not in any way prevent later rejection when such defect is discovered, nor shall it obligate the Engineer for final acceptance. Technicians are

not authorized to revoke, alter, relax, enlarge, or release any requirements of the Specifications, nor to approve or accept any portion of the Work.

4. Responsibilities and Duties of Contractor:
  - a. The use of testing services shall in no way relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to furnish materials and construction in full compliance with the Drawings and Specifications. To facilitate testing services, the Contractor shall:
    - 1) Secure and deliver to the Testing Laboratory, representative samples of the materials he proposes to use and which are required to be tested.
    - 2) Furnish such casual labor as is necessary to obtain and handle samples at the project or at other sources of material.
    - 3) Advise the testing laboratory and Engineer sufficiently in advance of operations (24 hrs. minimum) to allow for completion of quality tests and for the assignment of personnel.
- B. Referenced Standards
  1. Comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following, unless otherwise shown or specified.
    - a. Texas Department of Transportation 2004, Standard Specification for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets and Bridges.
    - b. Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, City of San Antonio, Texas.
    - c. TxDOT TEX-113E - Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials; 2010.

#### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates: Submit certificates of compliance with these specifications for the following materials:
  1. Lime.
  2. Flexible Base.
  3. Asphalt Stabilized Base.
  4. Cement.
  5. Curing Seal Coat.
  6. Tack Coat.
  7. Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete.
  8. Aggregates for Surface Treatments.
  9. Reinforcing Steel.
- B. Shop Drawings
  1. Submit the following:
    - a. Detailed reinforcing steel layout.
    - b. Detailed construction and control joint layout.
- C. Laboratory Test Reports
  1. Submit copies of laboratory test reports for optimum lime content for subgrade stabilization, and mix designs for Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete and Portland Cement Concrete.
- D. All paving and base course materials shall be tested and approved prior to delivery to the site. Samples of materials proposed for use as pavement and base course should be submitted by the Contractor to the Testing Laboratory for testing. Samples of materials shall be submitted at least 14 days in advance of its use.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. The source of materials shall be acceptable to the Engineer. Materials shall conform to the following:
1. Flexible Base
    - a. Base material shall be crushed or uncrushed as necessary to meet the requirements hereinafter specified, and shall consist of durable stone or gravel, crushed and/or screened to the required particle size, with or without other approved fine sized materials. The material shall be from approved sources.
      - 1) Testing of flexible base material shall be in accordance with the following standard laboratory test procedures:
        - (a) Preparation of Soil
        - (b) Constants and Sieve Analysis: TxDOT TEX-110-E
        - (c) Liquid Limit: TxDOT TEX-104-E
        - (d) Plastic Limit: TxDOT TEX-105-E
        - (e) Plasticity Index: TxDOT TEX-106-E
        - (f) Linear Shrinkage: TxDOT TEX-107-E
        - (g) Sieve Analysis: TxDOT TEX-110-E
        - (h) Wet Ball Mill: TxDOT TEX-116-E
        - (i) Los Angeles Abrasion: ASTM C 131 (Grad. A)
      - 2) Samples for testing the material shall be taken prior to compaction operations.
      - 3) The material shall be well graded and when properly tested shall meet the following requirements of Texas Department of Transportation Specifications for Type A Grade 2 Flexible Base:
        - (a) Retained on 2½ inch sieve: 0%
        - (b) Retained on 1¾ inch sieve: 0-10%
        - (c) Retained on No. 4 sieve: 45-75%
        - (d) Retained on 40 mesh sieve: 60-85%
      - 4) The material passing the 40 mesh sieve shall be known as "Soil Binder" and shall meet the following requirements:
        - (a) The liquid limit shall not exceed 40.
        - (b) The plasticity index shall not exceed 12.
        - (c) The linear shrinkage shall not exceed 10.(Note: The linear shrinkage shall be calculated from the volumetric shrinkage at the liquid limit.)
      - 5) The crushed stone or crushed gravel shall have an abrasion of no more than 40 when subjected to the Los Angeles Abrasion Test.
    2. Asphalt Treated Base
      - a. This item shall consist of a compacted mixture of mineral aggregate and asphaltic material mixed hot in a mixing plant. The asphalt stabilized base shall be constructed on an approved subgrade, as herein specified and in accordance with details shown on the plans. Unless otherwise specified in this Section, all asphalt stabilized base materials shall conform to TxDOT, Item 292 "Asphalt Treatment (Plant Mixed)".
        - 1) Mineral Aggregate:



- (a) Description: The material shall be crushed or uncrushed and shall be screened as necessary to meet the requirements hereinafter specified and shall consist of durable aggregate particles. Unless otherwise specified on the plans, one or more mineral aggregates may be used to produce the specified mixture.
- (b) Grades: The grading of the mineral aggregate shall conform to the limitations as shown below:

## GRADE 1:

<u>Sieve</u>	<u>Percent Retained</u>
1-1/2 inches	0%
1 inch	0-10%
3/8 inch	30-55%
No. 4	45-70%
No. 40	70-85%

- (c) Tests:
- (1) Unless otherwise specified on the plans, the mineral aggregate for Grade 1 shall meet the following physical requirements:  
Los Angeles Abrasion: 50 Max.\*  
Plasticity Index: 10 Max.  
Liquid Limit: 40 Max.  
Decantation: 5% Max.  
Crushed Faces: 60% Max.  
Sand equivalent value shall not be less than 40.  
\*Wet Ball Mill may be used in lieu of Los Angeles Abrasion when shown on the plans. A maximum Wet Ball Mill value of 50 is allowed.
- (2) Testing of the mineral aggregates shall be as required and in accordance with the following Texas Department of Transportation Standard Test Methods:  
Preparation of Soil  
Constants and Sieve Analysis: TEX-110-E  
Liquid Limit: TEX-104-E  
Plastic Limit: TEX-105-E  
Plasticity Index: TEX-106-E  
Sieve Analysis: TEX-110-E  
Wet Ball Mill: TEX-116-E  
Los Angeles Abrasion: TEX-410-A  
Sand Equivalent: TEX-203-F  
Decantation: TEX-406-A  
Crushed Faces: TEX-460-A
- (3) Samples for testing the material shall be taken prior to the mixing operations. Where more than one material is used, tests will be on the combined material unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- (d) Additives:

- (1) Additives to facilitate mixing and/or improve the quality of the asphaltic mixture shall be used when noted on the plans or may be used upon written authorization by the Engineer.
- (e) Material Sources:
  - (1) All materials shall be obtained from sources reviewed by the Engineer.
  - (2) The mineral aggregate sources shall be opened up in such manner as to immediately expose the vertical faces of all the various strata of acceptable material and, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer, the material shall be secured in successive vertical cuts extending through all the exposed strata in order that a uniformly mixed material will be secured.
  - (3) Unless otherwise shown on the plans, one or more types of mineral aggregate or binder may be used to produce the specified mixture.
  - (4) Recycled Materials, including reclaimed asphalt concrete pavement (RAP), are allowed when shown on plans and are to be in accordance with Item 292 of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications. Stockpile aggregates for each source and type separately. Do not add material to an approved stockpile unless approved by the Engineer.
- 2) Asphaltic Material:
  - (a) Asphaltic material shall be of the type determined by the Engineer and shall meet the requirements of Item No. 300, "Asphalt, Oils and Emulsions" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications. The grade of asphalt shall be PG 70-22 unless otherwise designated on the plans. When RAP is allowed by plan note, use no more than 30% RAP in TxDOT Type A or B HMA, and use no more than 20% RAP for TxDOT Type C or D unless otherwise shown on the plans.
- 3) Asphaltic Stabilized Mixture:
  - (a) Paving Mixture:
    - (1) The mixture shall consist of a uniform mixture of mineral aggregate and asphaltic material. The mineral aggregate will conform to the gradation requirements specified. The asphaltic material shall form from 4.0 to 9.0 percent of the mixture by weight unless otherwise shown on the plans. The design percent asphalt shall be determined in accordance with Test Method TEX-126-E or Test Method TEX-204F and procedures outlined in the TxDOT Bulletin C-14. The required method of control along with any required strength, laboratory density shall be specified on the plans. The percent asphalt in the mix shall be determined by either Extraction, Test Method TEX-210-F, or Pressure Pycnometer, Test Method TEX-126-E.
  - (b) Tolerances:
    - (1) The Engineer will designate the asphalt content to be used in the mixture after design tests have been made with the aggregate to be used in the project. When tested as determined by the Engineer, samples of the mixture shall not vary from the asphalt content

designated by the Engineer by more than 0.5 percent dry weight (based on total mixture).

3. Water
  - a. Water shall be free from substances deleterious to the hardening of the treated base and shall be reviewed by the Engineer.
4. Cement for Stabilized Base
  - a. Cement shall be Type 1 Portland Cement of a standard brand and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM Designation C-150.
    - 1) One bag, containing one (1) cubic foot of cement shall be considered as weighing 94 pounds net. One (1) barrel of cement shall be considered as weighing 376 pounds net, and containing four (4) cubic feet.
    - 2) Contractors, as their option, may use bulk cement, provided the apparatus for handling and spreading the cement is reviewed by the Engineer. Bulk cement shall be weighed on platform scales or standard plant batch weighing equipment reviewed by the Engineer.
    - 3) Cement delivered in bags shall be plainly marked with the brand name of the manufacturer. All bags shall be in good condition at the time of delivery. Cement salvaged from discharge or used bags shall not be permitted.
5. Asphalt Oils and Emulsions
  - a. RC-250 Liquid Asphalt and SS-1/SS-1H Emulsion used as a seal shall meet the requirements set forth in Item 300 "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions," of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
  - b. Where Emulsified Asphalts are used, the amount of emulsified asphalt as a percentage by volume of the total mixture shall be within the limits shown on the plans, or shall be of a percentage as directed by the Engineer.
    - 1) Prime Coat:
      - (a) Unless the type and grade are shown on the plans, utilize an MC-30 or AE-P asphalt cement in accordance with Item 300, "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions" of the Standard Specifications of the Texas Department of Transportation for prime coat. Emulsified asphalts as a percentage by volume of the total mixture shall be used within the limits shown on the plans or as directed/approved by the Engineer.
    - 2) Tack Coat:
      - (a) The asphaltic material used for Tack Coat shall meet the requirements for "Asphalt Cement", "Cut-Back Asphalt", or "Emulsified Asphalt", in Item No. 300 "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions," of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications. The asphaltic material used for Tack Coat shall be that type or grade shown on the plans, or shall be as directed, or approved by the Engineer.
    - 3) Asphaltic Materials for Surface Treatments:
      - (a) The asphaltic material used for surface treatments shall meet the requirements for "Asphaltic Cement" in Item No. 300 "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications. The asphaltic material used shall be AC-10 or equal, or shall be as approved by the Engineer.
6. Aggregates for Surface Treatments

- a. Aggregates shall meet all the requirements of Item No. 302, "Aggregates for Surface Treatments" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications and subsequent revisions thereto.
  - b. The percent of wear, as determined by Test Method TEX-410-A for the material shall not exceed 15 percent. The aggregate shall be Grade 3, in accordance with the following gradation requirements when tested by Test Method TEX-200.
    - 1) Retained on 3/4" sieve: 0%
    - 2) Retained on 5/8" sieve: 0-2%
    - 3) Retained on 1/2" sieve: 5-20%
    - 4) Retained on 3/8" sieve: --
    - 5) Retained on No. 4 sieve: 90-100%
    - 6) Retained on No. 10 sieve: 98-100%
7. Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete
- a. Materials used in Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement shall meet the requirements as set forth in Item 340, "Dense-Graded Hot Mix Asphalt (Method)" or Item 341, "Dense-Graded Hot Mix Asphalt (QC/QA)" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
  - b. Paving Mixture used shall be Type D. This mixture shall conform to the requirements of Paragraph 4 of Item 340, "Dense-Graded Hot Mix Asphalt (Method)" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
    - 1) Part (1) of Paragraph 4 shall be revised as follows, and no other requirements are waived or changed hereby.
      - (a) Density
        - (1) Minimum: 94%
        - (2) Maximum: 99%
        - (3) Optimum: 97%
8. Lime for Stabilized Subgrade
- a. Lime for this item shall conform to the requirements of TxDOT Item No. 260, "Lime-Treatment - Road Mixed" of the TxDOT Standard Specifications (Latest Edition). Acceptable forms of lime shall be:
    - 1) "Type A, Hydrated Lime"
    - 2) "Type B, Commercial Lime Slurry"
    - 3) "Type C, Quicklime"
  - b. The Contractor shall select, prior to construction, the grade to be used and shall notify the Engineer in writing before changing from one grade to another. Lime shall be placed in slurry form only, unless written permission is granted by the Engineer and a safety and containment plan is submitted to the Engineer by the Contractor seven days prior to use. In circumstances where it would be beneficial to utilize lime for "drying" subgrade materials to expedite construction, the Contractor may request approval from the Engineer to use pelletized lime.
  - c. Materials are to be provided in conformance with the following items and requirements:
    - 1) Lime: TxDOT DMS-6350 "Lime and Lime Slurry"
    - 2) Mix Design: The Engineer will determine the target lime content and optimum moisture content in accordance with TxDOT TEX-121-E.
    - 3) When treating existing materials, limit the amount of asphalt concrete pavement to no more than 50% of the mix.

9. Forms
  - a. Formwork shall conform to the provisions of TxDOT Item 360 "Concrete Pavement". Forms shall be constructed of wood or steel, profiled to suit condition.
10. Concrete Pavement
  - a. Concrete and concrete materials shall conform to the provisions of the TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 360, "Concrete Pavement", unless otherwise stated in this specification.
    - 1) Coarse aggregate will conform to the gradation requirements of Aggregate Grade No. 2.
    - 2) Fine aggregates will conform to the gradation requirements of Aggregate Grade No. 1.
    - 3) Portland Cement shall be Type I.
  - b. Air content shall be  $4\% \pm 1\%$ .
  - c. Slump shall range from 2 to 5 inches.
  - d. Provide concrete design per Geotechnical Report. If not specified, provide Class P concrete designed to meet a minimum average compressive strength of 4,000 psi at 28-days (75% strength at 7 days). Test in accordance with TxDOT TEX-448-A or TxDOT TEX-418-A.
  - e. For concrete curbs that are placed separately from the pavement, refer to specification Section 32 1313.10 (use Class A or P concrete for curbs that are placed separately from the pavement).
11. Steel Expansion Joint Dowels
  - a. Dowel bars shall be round smooth steel conforming to ASTM A 36, Grade 60. Coat dowels with an approved de-bonding material.
12. Reinforcing Steel
  - a. Reinforcing steel bars shall conform to TxDOT Item 440, "Reinforcing Steel", ASTM A 615 Grade 60, deformed bars. All reinforcing steel shall be new billet steel.

## **2.02 CUTTING AND REPLACING PAVEMENTS**

- A. All materials used for cutting and replacing pavements shall conform to the requirements of this section.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 GENERAL**

- A. The drives and parking areas shall be constructed to the lines, and typical section shown on the drawings.

### **3.02 SUBGRADE PREPARATION**

- A. Preparation of the subgrade including compaction shall be completed for the full width of the roadways and parking areas, or as shown on plans.
  1. The subgrade shall be compacted to at least 95 percent (95%) of maximum density between optimum moisture content and optimum moisture content +4% as determined by TxDOT TEX-114-E.
- B. No materials shall be placed on subgrades which are muddy or have water thereon.

### **3.03 CONSTRUCTION OF HOT MIX ASPHALTIC CONCRETE ROADWAYS, AND PARKING AREAS**

- A. General

1. The roadways, and parking areas shall be constructed to the lines, grades, and typical section shown on the Drawings.
  2. Conform to all applicable requirements of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
- B. Flexible Base Course
1. Equipment:
    - a. All equipment necessary to properly perform and complete the work shall be on the project prior to beginning the work, shall be subject to the review of the Engineer, and shall be maintained in a satisfactory condition at all times.
      - 1) Motor graders shall be self-propelled, shall have tandem or four-wheel drive, shall have a blade length of not less than 12 feet, shall have a wheel base length (the distance between front and rear axles) of not less than 16 feet, and shall be tight and in good operating condition and reviewed by the Engineer.
      - 2) Compaction equipment shall be of sufficient weight and adequately loaded to accomplish the required compaction.
      - 3) Water distributors shall be equipped with positive and rapidly working cut-off valves, approved spray bars equipped with bituminous nozzles and a power pump that will insure distribution of water in a uniform and controllable rate of application. Spray bars shall be so constructed that the effective length may be quickly and easily altered.
      - 4) All equipment shall meet these specifications and be reviewed by the Engineer. Equipment may be eliminated or substituted only upon review of the Engineer.
      - 5) Nothing in this section shall relieve the Contractor of his responsibility for producing finished work of the quality specified.
  2. Construction Methods:
    - a. General:
      - 1) It is the intent of this specification to obtain a complete course, or courses, of Flexible Base of uniform moisture and density, with a closely-knit surface free from laminations, cracks, ridges, or loose material, and to the surface requirements hereinafter specified.
    - b. Placing of Flexible Base Material:
      - 1) The Flexible Base material shall be placed on the approved subgrade in courses not to exceed six inches (6") compacted depth. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor that the required amount of material be delivered and uniformly spread and shaped. All material shall be moved from the place where it is dumped by cutting into windrows. After the material has been cut into windrows, it shall be sprinkled, spread, shaped, and rolled in proper sequence to prevent segregation, and as necessary for required compaction.
    - c. Compaction and Finishing:
      - 1) Flexible Base shall be compacted to an apparent dry density of not less than 95 percent of the maximum dry density, as determined in accordance with TxDOT Test Method TEX-113-E. Tests for density will be made within 24 hours after compaction operations are completed. If the material fails to meet the density specified, it shall be reworked as necessary to meet the density required. Just prior to the placing of any succeeding course of Flexible Base, surfacing on any previously completed course, the density and moisture of the top three inches

(3") of Flexible Base shall be checked and if tests show the density to be more than 2 percent below the specified minimum, or the moisture content to be more than 3 percent above or below the optimum, the course shall be reworked as necessary to obtain the specified compaction and moisture content.

- 2) The surface upon completion shall be smooth and in conformity with the typical sections and to the established lines and grades. Any deviation in excess of 1/4 inch in cross-section and in length of 16 feet measured longitudinally, shall be corrected. All irregularities, depressions, or weak spots which develop shall be corrected.

C. Asphalt Stabilized Base Course

1. Equipment:

- a. All equipment for the handling of all materials and mixing and placing of the mixture shall be maintained in good repair and operating condition and subject to review by the Engineer. Any equipment found to be defective and affecting the quality of the mixture will be replaced.
- b. Mixing Plants:
  - 1) Mixing plants that will not consistently produce a paving mixture meeting all the requirements of this specification will be condemned. Mixing plants may be of the weight-batching type, the continuous mixing type or the dryer-drum type meeting all the requirements of Item 345, "Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mix)" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications and subsequent revisions and Special Provisions thereto.
- c. Asphalt Material Heating Equipment:
  - 1) Asphalt material heating equipment shall conform to Paragraph 345.4 of Item 345, "Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mix)" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications and subsequent revisions and Special Provisions thereto.
- d. Spreading and Finishing Machine:
  - 1) The spreading and finishing machine shall be of a type reviewed by the Engineer and shall be capable of producing a surface that will be smooth and true to the established line, grade and cross-section and acceptable to the Engineer. Unacceptable finish shall be corrected by the addition of mixture placed and finished at the entire expense of the Contractor.

2. Construction Methods:

- a. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to produce transport, place and compact the specified mixture in accordance with these specifications and as reviewed by the Engineer.
- b. The asphaltic mixture, when placed with a spreading and finishing machine shall not be placed when the air temperature is below 50°F, and is falling, but it may be placed when the air temperature is above 40°F and is rising. The mixture when placed with a motor grader shall not be placed when the air temperature is below 60°F, and is falling, but may be placed when the air temperature is above 50°F and is rising. The air temperature shall be taken in the shade away from artificial heat. It is further provided that the prime coat, tack coat or asphalt stabilized base shall be placed only when the humidity, general weather conditions and temperature and

moisture conditions of the subbase or subgrade, in the opinion of the Engineer are suitable.

- c. If, after being discharged from the mixer and prior to placing, the temperature of the asphaltic mixture is 50°F or more below the temperature reviewed by the Engineer all or any part of the load may be rejected and payment will not be made for the rejected material.
  - 1) Prime Coat:
    - (a) If a prime coat is required it shall be applied and paid for as a separate item conforming to the requirements of Texas Department of Transportation Item 300 "Prime Coat", except the air temperature for application shall be as provided above for asphaltic mixture to be laid by a spreading and finishing machine. The tack coat or asphalt stabilized base shall not be applied on a previously primed course until the prime coat has completely cured to the satisfaction of the Engineer.
  - 2) Tack Coat:
    - (a) Before the asphaltic mixture is laid, the surface upon which the tack coat is to be placed shall be cleaned thoroughly to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The surface shall be given a uniform application of tack coat using asphaltic materials of this specification. This tack coat shall be applied, as directed by the Engineer, with an approved sprayer at a rate not to exceed 0.10 gallon per square yard of surface. Where the mixture will adhere to the surface on which it is to be placed without the use of a tack coat, the tack coat may be eliminated by the Engineer. All contact surfaces of curbs and structures and all joints shall be painted with a thin uniform coat of the asphaltic material meeting the requirements for a tack coat. The tack coat shall be rolled with a pneumatic tire roller when directed by the Engineer.
  - 3) Transporting:
    - (a) The asphaltic mixture, prepared as specified above shall be hauled to the site in tight vehicles previously cleaned of all foreign material. The dispatching of the vehicles shall be arranged so that all material delivered may be placed, and all rolling shall be completed during daylight hours. The inside of the truck body may be given a light coat of oil, lime slurry or other material satisfactory to the Engineer, if necessary, to prevent mixture from adhering to the body. In cool weather or for long hauls, canvas covers and insulating of truck bodies may be required.
  - 4) Placing:
    - (a) Generally, the asphaltic mixture shall be dumped and spread on the approved prepared surface with the specified spreading and finishing machine, in such a manner that when properly compacted, the finished course will be smooth, of uniform density, and will conform with the typical sections shown on the plans and to the lines and grades established by the Engineer. During the application of asphaltic material, care shall be taken to prevent splattering of adjacent pavement, curb and gutter and structures. Any unsightly splattering of surroundings shall be clean and restored to original condition at the sole cost of the Contractor.



- (b) The mixture shall be spread and compacted in layers or lifts as specified on the plans or as directed by the Engineer. The sequence of compacting shall be such that undue displacement of the edge of the course does not occur. On deep lifts, the edge of the course may be rolled with a motor grader wheel or similar equipment or supported by blading a roll of earth against the edge of the course prior to compacting the surface.
  - (c) When the asphaltic mixture is placed in a narrow strip along the edge of an existing pavement, or used to level up small areas of an existing pavement or placed in small irregular areas when the use of a finishing machine is not practical, the finishing machine may be eliminated when authorized by the Engineer, provided a satisfactory surface can be obtained by other acceptable methods.
- 5) Compacting:
  - (a) As directed by the Engineer the asphalt stabilized base shall be compacted thoroughly and uniformly with the specified rollers. In lieu of the rolling equipment specified, the Contractor may, upon written authorization from the Engineer, operate other compacting equipment that will provide equivalent relative compaction as the specified equipment. If the substituted compaction equipment fails to produce the desired compaction as would be expected of the specified equipment, as determined by the Engineer, its use shall be discontinued. When directed by the Engineer, the initial compaction shall be accomplished with the pneumatic tire roller.
  - (b) When rolling with the three-wheel, tandem, or vibratory rollers, rolling shall start longitudinally at the sides and proceed toward the center of the pavement, overlapping on successive trips by at least half the width of the rear wheel unless otherwise directed by the Engineer. Alternate trips of the roller shall be slightly different in length. When roller with vibratory steel-wheel rollers, the manufacturer's recommendation shall be followed unless directed otherwise by the Engineer. Rolling with pneumatic-tire roller shall be done as directed by the Engineer. Roller shall be continued until no further increase in density can be obtained and all roller marks are eliminated. The motion of the roller shall be slow enough at all times to avoid displacement of the mixture. If any displacement occurs, it shall be corrected at once by the use of a rake, and of fresh mixtures where required. The roller shall not be allowed to stand on any portion of the mixture pavement which has not been fully compacted. To prevent adhesion of the mixture to the roller, the wheels shall be kept thoroughly moistened with water, but an excess of water will not be permitted. All rollers must be in good mechanical condition. Necessary precautions shall be taken to prevent the dropping of gasoline, oil, grease or other foreign matter on the roadway, either when the rollers are in operation or when standing.
  - (c) Hand Tamping:
    - (1) The edges of the pavement along curbs, headers and similar structures, and all places not accessible to the roller, or in such

positions as will not allow thorough compaction with the rollers, shall be thoroughly compacted with lightly oiled tamps.

(d) Surface Finish:

- (1) The compacted material shall conform to the typical cross sections, lines and grades as shown on plans and directed by the Engineer and shall have a surface smoothness as specified below and with a reasonably uniform texture acceptable to the Engineer. Unacceptable finished surfaces may be corrected by the placement of additional mixture, all at the expense of the Contractor.

(e) Surface Smoothness:

- (1) Test finished surface of each bituminous concrete course for smoothness, using a 10-foot straightedge applied parallel to and at right angles to centerline of paved areas.

- (2) Check surfaced areas at intervals as directed by Engineer.

- (3) Surfaces will not be acceptable if exceeding the following:

Sub-base Courses: 3/8 inch in 10 feet

Surface Course: 1/4 inch in 10 feet

Crowned Surfaces:

Test crowned surfaces with a crown template, centered and at right angle to the crown.

Surfaces will not be acceptable if varying more than 1/4" from the template.

Protection of the Work and Opening to Traffic:

- (4) The completed asphalt stabilized base course shall be opened to traffic as provided by the plans and as directed by the Engineer. All construction traffic allowed on the base course shall comply with the State laws governing traffic, unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer. When another roadway surface is provided for the traveling public and construction traffic through the project, the Engineer may prohibit traffic on the completed base course.

3. In Place Density:

- a. When in-place density is required, it is the intent of this specification that the material be placed and compacted to 96 percent of the maximum molded gyrated density as determined by Test Method TEX-126-E or as specified on the plans. The maximum molded gyrated density shall be determined from material sampled from the mixing plant and molded in accordance with Test Method TEX-126-E. Procedures and methods outlined in Test Method TEX-126-E shall also be used in determining the in-place density unless determined otherwise by the Engineer. The field specimens utilized for the in-place density testing may be either cores or sections of asphalt stabilized base tested according to Test Method TEX-207-F. Other methods of determining in-place density which correlate satisfactorily with those results obtained through use of Test Method TEX-126-E may be used. In-place density tests are intended for control tests. If the in-place density of the mixture produced has a value lower than that specified and, in the opinion of the Engineer is not due to a change in the quality of the material, production may proceed with subsequent changes in the mix and/or construction operations until the in-place density equals or exceeds the specified density. Requirements

specifying air temperature limitations for placing and types of rollers to be furnished are not applicable when in-place density is specified. Regardless of the method of compaction control followed, all rolling shall be completed before the mixture temperature drops below 175°F.

D. Cement Stabilized Base Course

1. Equipment:

- a. All equipment necessary to properly perform and complete the work shall be on the project prior to beginning the work, shall be subject to the review of the Engineer, and shall be maintained in a satisfactory condition at all times.
- b. The following list of equipment shall be considered the minimum necessary for cement stabilized base work:
  - 1) A single pass traveling mixing plant may be used if it can be made to meet the exact requirements of this Specification.
  - 2) In lieu of a traveling mixing plant, the following equipment shall be used for the "Mixed-in-Place" method of processing:
    - (a) 1-Motor Grader
    - (b) 1-7-foot self-powered, self-propelled, heavy-duty rotary speed mixer.
- c. Motor graders shall be self-propelled, shall have tandem or four-wheel drive, shall have a blade length of not less than 12 feet, shall have a wheel base length (the distance between front and rear axles) of not less than 16 feet, and shall be tight and in good operation condition and reviewed by the Engineer.
- d. Cement shall be distributed by cement spreaders equipped with hoppers of adequate capacity to prevent spillage. The proportioning and distributing devices shall be positive in action and capable of necessary adjustments in quantity of cement spread and width of lane spread. The spreader shall be so designed that its accuracy is not varied by changing conditions of the surface over which it operates. The cement spreader shall distribute cement to an accuracy of five percent (5%) of theoretical quantity per square yard and shall be approved by the Engineer.
- e. Compaction equipment shall be of sufficient weight and adequately loaded to accomplish the required compaction.
- f. Water distributors shall be equipped with positive and rapidly working cut off valves, approved spray bars equipped with bituminous nozzles and a power pump that will insure distribution of water in a uniform and controllable rate of application. Spray bars shall be so constructed that the effective length may be quickly and easily altered.
- g. All equipment shall meet these specifications and be reviewed by the Engineer. Equipment may be eliminated or substituted only upon review by the Engineer.
- h. Nothing in this section shall relieve the Contractor of his responsibility for producing finished work of the quality specified.

2. Test Section:

- a. If the Contractor has had no previous experience in construction of "Cement Stabilized Base", he shall be required to construct a "Test Section" in accordance with the following:
- b. The first section of each cement treated course shall serve as a test section. Its length (not less than 350 linear feet or more than 500 linear feet) shall be determined by the capability of the equipment to perform the work. In case it is found that the work is not satisfactory with respect to the specification

requirements, the Contractor shall revise his procedures and augment or replace equipment as necessary to assure work completed in accordance with the Specifications. Additional test sections may be required as directed by the Engineer. Test sections not conforming to the requirements of the Specifications shall be reconstructed.

3. Construction Methods:

a. General:

- 1) It is the intent of this specification to obtain a complete course or courses of cement stabilized base of uniform moisture and density, containing a uniform mixture of cement; a closely knit surface free from laminations, cracks, ridges, or loose material and to the surface requirements hereinafter specified. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to furnish adequate equipment and regulate his sequence of operation in such a manner as to provide a cement treated course or courses with the proper amount of cement for the depth as shown on the plans and to maintain or reconstruct the course or courses as necessary to conform to the specific requirements specified.

b. Placing of Base Material:

- 1) After approval of the subgrade, base material shall be delivered on the road and placed in windrows of uniform sections, then accurately bladed and shaped to required crown and grade to provide a base of compacted depth required by the plans.

c. Final Preparation of Section:

- 1) On the day immediately preceding processing, water, as required, shall be added and uniformly mixed full depth with the base material. This operation shall precede cement spreading by at least 12 hours. The section shall then be accurately bladed and shaped to required grade and section.

d. Application of Cement:

- 1) The specified quantity of Portland Cement required for the full depth of treatment shall be uniformly spread over the surface. Each pass of the cement spreader shall be positioned by either the curb line or a string line. Cement shall be applied only to such areas as can be completed as herein specified within the daylight hours of the same day. No equipment, except that used in spreading and mixing, will be allowed to pass over the freshly spread cement until it is mixed with the base material.

e. Mixing and Processing:

- 1) Either method (1) or (2) below may be used at the option of the Contractor. Method (3) shall be used only on sections less than 200 linear feet in length.
  - (a) Multiple-Pass Traveling Mixing Plant:
    - (1) After the cement has been applied, it shall be mixed with the base or subbase material. Mixing shall continue until the cement has been sufficiently blended with the base or subbase material to prevent the formation of cement balls when water is applied. Any mixture that has not been compacted and finished shall not remain undisturbed for more than 30 minutes.
    - (2) Immediately after the mixing of base or subbase material and cement is completed, water, as necessary, shall be uniformly applied and incorporated into mixture. Proper care shall be exercised to insure

proper moisture distribution at all times. After the last increment of water has been added, mixing shall continue until a thorough and uniform mix has been obtained.

(b) Single-Pass Traveling Mixing Plant:

- (1) After the cement has been applied, it shall be sufficiently mixed with the base or subbase material to prevent the formation of cement balls when water is applied. Unpulverized soil lumps in mixture will not be allowed. Should this condition prevail, the Contractor shall "pre-wet" the raw base or subbase material as necessary to correct this condition. The mixer shall be provided with means for visibly and accurately gauging the water application. The water shall be applied uniformly through a pressure spray bar. After cement is spread, mixing operations shall proceed as follows:
- (2) The mixer shall, in one continuous operation, mix the base or subbase material and cement full depth, add the required moisture uniformly, thoroughly moist-mix the material, cement, and water, spread the completed mixture evenly over the machine processed width of the subgrade, and leave it in a loose condition ready for immediate compaction.
- (3) The mixture shall not remain undisturbed, after mixing and before compacting, for more than 30 minutes.

(c) Blade Mixing:

- (1) On sections of street of 200 linear feet or less and authorization by the Engineer, the requirements for mixing equipment may be waived and the cement mixed with a mortar grader.
- (2) Immediately after the cement has been distributed, the material shall be scarified full depth and the cement mixed with the loose base material for the full depth of the treatment by blading into windrows. Mixing shall continue until the cement has been sufficiently blended with the base material to prevent formation of cement balls when water is applied.
- (3) Immediately after the mixing of base material and cement is complete, water as necessary shall be uniformly applied and incorporated into the mixture. Pressurized equipment and supply provided shall be adequate to insure continuous application of the required amount of water to the section being processed. Proper care shall be exercised to insure proper moisture distribution at all times. After the last increment of water has been added, mixing shall continue until thorough and uniform mix has been obtained.

f. Compaction and Finishing:

- 1) The material shall be compacted to not less than 95 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by TxDOT TEX-113-E. At the start of compaction, the percentage of moisture in the mixture shall be less than that quantity which will cause the mixture to become unstable during compaction and finishing.
- 2) The surface upon completion shall be smooth and in conformity with typical sections and to the established lines and grades. Any deviation in excess of  $\frac{1}{4}$

inch in cross section and in a length of 16 feet measured longitudinally shall be corrected. All irregularities, depressions, or weak spots which develop shall be corrected.

- 3) All sections of cement stabilized base shall be processed full width each day without longitudinal construction joints.
  - 4) The density of the cement stabilized base shall be determined by the Engineer after construction. Any portion which has a density below that specified herein and which has not properly hardened after a suitable time interval shall be removed and replaced to meet this Specification at the expense of the Contractor.
- g. Protection and Cover:
- 1) The completed cement treated base course shall be protected against rapid drying by applying a minimum of 0.20 gallons per square yard of RC-2 Liquid Asphalt, or a minimum of 0.15 gallons per square yard of EA-11M Emulsion. The actual amounts may be varied in the field by the Engineer to insure that a complete and adequate seal is achieved.
  - 2) This curing seal shall be applied as soon as practicable, but not later than eight (8) hours after the completion of final compaction. The surface shall be kept moist until the curing seal is applied. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to protect the asphalt membrane from being picked up by traffic by either sanding or dusting the surface.
  - 3) The curing period shall be a minimum of 14 days (24 hours each) with a minimum temperature of 40°F unless waived by the Engineer.
- h. Weather Limitations:
- 1) Cement stabilized base construction shall not begin unless the temperature is at least 40°F in the shade and rising or when the wind velocity exceeds 15 MPH. The Contractor is responsible for the quality of the base under any weather conditions.
- i. Traffic:
- 1) The Contractor shall not be permitted to drive heavy equipment over completed portions, but pneumatic-tired equipment required for hauling cement and water may be permitted after the surface has hardened sufficiently to prevent the equipment from marring the surface, provided protection and cover specified herein are not impaired. The cement stabilized base may be opened to local traffic as soon as the RC-2 has been applied and dusted or sanded as necessary to prevent it from being picked up by traffic. It may be opened to all traffic after 7 days.
- j. Maintenance:
- 1) The Contractor shall be required to maintain at his own expense the entire cement stabilized base within the limits of his contract in good condition satisfactory to the Engineer from the time he first starts work until all work shall have been completed.
  - 2) Maintenance shall include immediate repairs of any defect that may occur after construction, which work shall be done by the Contractor at his own expense and repeated as often as necessary to keep the area continuously intact. Repairs are to be made in a manner to insure restoration of a uniform surface of good quality cement stabilized base. Faulty work shall be replaced

for the full depth of base. Any low area shall be remedied by replacing the material for the full depth of treatment, rather than adding a thin layer of base material to the completed work.

E. Prime Coat

1. When the area and/or base is satisfactory to receive the prime coat, the surface shall be cleaned by sweeping or other acceptable methods. If necessary, the surface shall be lightly sprinkled with water just prior to application of the asphaltic material. The asphaltic material shall be applied on the clean surface by an acceptable type of self-propelled pressure distributor so operated as to distribute the prime coat at a rate not to exceed 0.20 gallon per square yard of surface, evenly and smoothly, under a pressure necessary for proper distribution. During the application of prime coat, care shall be taken to prevent splattering of adjacent pavement, curb and gutters or structures.
2. Prime Coat shall not be applied when the air temperature is below 60° F and falling, but it may be applied when the air temperature is above 50° F and is rising; the air temperature being taken in the shade away from artificial heat.
3. Asphaltic material shall not be placed when general weather conditions, in the opinion of the Engineer, are not suitable.

F. Tack Coat

1. Before the tack coat is applied, the surface shall be cleaned thoroughly. The asphaltic material shall be applied on the clean surface by an acceptable type of self-propelled pressure distributor so operated as to distribute the tack coat at a rate not to exceed 0.10 gallon per square yard of surface, evenly and smoothly under a pressure necessary for proper distribution. Where the pavement mixture will adhere to the surface on which it is to be placed without the use of a tack coat, the tack coat may be eliminated by the Engineer. All contact surfaces of curbs and structures and all joints shall be painted with a thin uniform coat of the asphaltic material used for tack coat. The tack coat shall be rolled with a pneumatic tire roller. During the application of tack coat, care shall be taken to prevent splattering of adjacent pavement, curb and gutters or structures.

G. Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete

1. Construction methods used in laying Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement shall meet the requirements as set forth in Item 340 "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement" of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications, with the following exception:
2. Application of Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement shall not begin unless the air temperature is at least sixty degrees Fahrenheit (60° F) and rising.

H. Surface Treatments

1. The area to be treated shall be cleaned of dirt, dust, or other deleterious matter by sweeping or other approved methods. If it is found necessary by the Engineer the surface shall be lightly sprinkled just prior to the first application of asphaltic material.
2. Asphaltic material shall be applied on the clean surface by an acceptable type of self-propelled distributor so operated as to distribute the material at the rate as shown on the plans, evenly and smoothly, under pressure necessary for proper distribution. The Contractor shall provide all necessary facilities for determining the temperature of the asphaltic material in all of the heating equipment and in the distributor, for

determining the rate of which it is applied, and for securing uniformity at the junction of two distributor loads. The distributor shall have been recently calibrated. Asphaltic materials shall not be applied until immediate covering is assured.

3. Aggregate shall be immediately and uniformly applied and spread by an acceptable self-propelled continuous feed aggregate spreader, unless otherwise authorized by the Engineer. The aggregate shall be applied at a rate as directed by the Engineer.
4. The entire surface shall then be broomed or raked as required and shall be thoroughly rolled as soon as practicable after its application. The cover material shall be rolled for its entire width with a multiple wheel self-propelled pneumatic tired traffic roller with provisions for loading to 8 tons. Rolling shall begin longitudinally at the edges of the mat and progress toward the center, uniformly lapping each preceding track by at least 1/2 the width of the roller and be repeated as often as necessary to thoroughly key the cover material into the bitumen over the entire surface. The roller shall be in first class operating condition.
5. Surface treatment or treatments shall not be applied when the air temperature is below 60°F and is falling, but is may be applied when the air temperature is above 50°F and is rising. Air temperature shall be taken in the shade and away from artificial heat. Asphaltic material shall not be placed when general weather conditions, in the opinion of the Engineer, are not suitable.
6. The Contractor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the surface until the work is acceptable to the Engineer.

I. Construction Joints

1. Construction joints shall be made in such a manner as to ensure a neat junction, thorough compaction, and bond throughout.
2. A transverse joint extending over the full width of the strip being laid and at right angles to its centerline shall be constructed at the end of each day's work and at any other times when the operations of placing the hot mixture are suspended for a period of time which will permit the mixture to chill. The forward end of a freshly laid strip shall be thoroughly compacted by rolling before the mixture has become chilled. When work is resumed, the end shall be cut vertically for the full depth of the layer.
3. When new pavement is to join pavement installed by others or previously laid pavement by the Contractor, the in-place pavement shall be neatly and carefully edged to allow for overlapping and feathering of the new surface course material. A tack coat of bituminous prime coat material shall be placed at the interface of new and previously laid material.

J. Traffic Maintenance

1. The pavement shall be opened to traffic when directed by the Engineer. Construction traffic on the pavement shall be held to a minimum and shall be acceptable to the Engineer. Adequate protection methods as reviewed by the Engineer shall be utilized when crossing roadways is required.

K. Field Quality Control

1. Contractor will employ a testing laboratory to perform field quality control. The testing laboratory will make compaction testing of flexible base. The testing laboratory will test the HMAC for Asphalt Extraction, Gradation, Bitumen Content, Stability and laboratory density. Contractor shall furnish all necessary assistance required by the testing laboratory. Contractor shall also furnish all labor, materials and equipment necessary



for sampling. Contractor shall furnish all necessary transportation to the Owner's Testing Laboratory required by the testing.

2. Quality Control Testing During Construction:
  - a. The testing laboratory will perform sampling and testing for field quality control during the placement of materials as follows:
    - 1) HMAC shall be tested as described in these Specifications, at least once for every 500 tons of materials placed or fraction thereof.
    - 2) Density:
      - (a) Compare density of in-place material against laboratory specimen or certificated on same for bituminous concrete mixture.
      - (b) Acceptable densities of in-place materials shall conform to applicable State Standard Requirements.
    - 3) Thickness:
      - (a) In-place compacted thickness shall average not less than the thickness specified.
    - 4) Surface Smoothness:
      - (a) Test finished surface of each bituminous concrete course for smoothness, using a 10-foot straight edge applied parallel to and at right angles to centerline of paved areas.
      - (b) Check surfaced areas at intervals as directed by Engineer.
      - (c) Surfaces will not be acceptable if exceeding the following:
        - (1) Base Courses: 3/8 inch in 10 feet.
        - (2) Surface Course: 1/4 inch in 10 feet.
        - (3) Crowned Surfaces:  
Test crowned surfaces with a crown template, centered and at right angle to the crown.  
Surfaces will not be acceptable if varying more than 1/4" from the template.

### 3.04 PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING

- A. General
  1. Unless otherwise noted in these Specifications, construction methods used to place all Portland Cement Concrete Paving are specified by TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 360, "Concrete Pavement".
- B. Inspection
  1. Verify subgrade is ready to support paving and imposed loads.
  2. Verify gradients and elevations of subgrade are correct.
- C. Preparation
  1. Moisten subgrade to minimize absorption of water from fresh concrete.
  2. Notify Engineer minimum 24 hours prior to commencement of concreting operations.
- D. Forming
  1. Place and secure forms to correct location, dimension, and profile.
  2. Assemble formwork to permit easy stripping and dismantling without damaging concrete.
  3. Place joint fillers vertical in position, in straight lines. Secure to form work during concrete placement.

- E. Reinforcement
  - 1. Reinforcing steel shall be grade 60 and shall be placed as shown on the plans. All concrete shall be continuously reinforced as shown on the plans.
- F. Formed Joints
  - 1. Transverse and longitudinal joints shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans and Texas Department of Transportation Specifications.
  - 2. Joints shall be filled in accordance with the construction drawings.
- G. Placing Concrete
  - 1. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, embedded parts and formed joints are not disturbed during concrete placement.
  - 2. Place concrete continuously between predetermined construction joints. Do not break or interrupt successive pours such that cold joints occur.
- H. Finishing
  - 1. All concrete pavement shall be finished in accordance with Texas Department of Transportation Item 360.
- I. Curing
  - 1. The Contractor shall select one of the methods of curing stated in TxDOT Standard Specifications, Item 360, Paragraph 360.11, "Curing".
  - 2. If the Contractor elects to use Membrane Curing, the curing compound must be reviewed by the Engineer.
- J. Field Quality Control
  - 1. Field inspection and testing will be performed according to the requirements of Division 1 - "General Requirements" of this project manual.
  - 2. Maintain records of placed concrete items. Record date, location of pour, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.
- K. Protection
  - 1. Immediately after placement, protect concrete under provisions of Section 03 3000 from premature drying excessive hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.

### **3.05 PAVEMENT REPLACEMENT**

- A. Cutting of Pavements
  - 1. Concrete and Asphaltic Concrete Pavements:
    - a. All concrete and asphaltic concrete pavements shall be cut with a concrete saw. The depth of the cut shall be such that upon removal of concrete and/or asphaltic concrete the sides of the cut will be straight and square. Care shall be taken, when cutting concrete pavement, not to cut transverse reinforcing steel.
- B. Removal of Bases
  - 1. Concrete and Cement Stabilized Bases:
    - a. Concrete and cement stabilized bases shall be removed by means of hand-held pneumatic pavement breakers with acceptable cutting bits. It is the intent of this specification that the base shall be removed in a manner that will leave the sides of the cut straight and square.
    - b. Where reinforcement is encountered in concrete bases, a minimum of one (1) foot shall be cleaned of all old concrete and left in place to tie to new reinforcement in the new concrete base.

2. Flexible Base:
  - a. Flexible bases shall be removed by normal trenching operations.
- C. Replacement of Bases
  1. Concrete Bases:
    - a. Concrete bases shall be replaced with Class "A" concrete conforming to the provisions of Item No. 300 "Concrete" of the City of San Antonio Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction. If existing concrete is steel reinforced, the reinforcing steel shall be replaced in accordance with Item No. 301, "Reinforcing Steel". The concrete shall have a slump of not more than three inches (3") and shall be spaded, tamped and finished to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Immediately following finishing operations, the surface shall be cured in accordance with the provisions of Item No. 305, "Membrane Curing". The concrete shall be protected from traffic for seventy-two (72) hours.
  2. Cement Stabilized Bases:
    - a. Cement stabilized base shall be replaced with cement stabilized base in accordance with Item No. 201, "Cement Stabilized Base" of the City of San Antonio Standard Specifications for Public Work Construction where width of trench permits, or with Class "C" concrete conforming to the requirements of Item No. 300, "Concrete". The concrete shall have a slump of not more than three inches (3") and shall be spaded, tamped, and finished to the satisfaction of the Engineer. The concrete shall be protected from traffic for seventy-two (72) hours prior to replacement of the surfacing.
  3. Flexible Base:
    - a. Flexible base shall be replaced with 1,000 psi (@ 28 days) concrete. The concrete shall have a slump of no more than three (3) inches and shall be spaded, tamped and finished to the satisfaction of the Inspector. The concrete shall be protected from traffic for seventy-two (72) hours prior to replacement of the surface.
  4. Asphalt Treated Base:
    - a. Asphalt treated base shall be furnished, placed and compacted in accordance with this Section.
- D. Replacement of Pavements
  1. Pavements shall be replaced under this item with either hot mix asphaltic concrete pavement, or Portland Cement concrete pavement in the thickness and type shown on the plans.
  2. When hot mix asphaltic concrete is shown on the plans as replacement of pavement, it shall be furnished and placed in accordance with TxDOT Item 340, "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement". Flexible bases shall be primed with asphalt or emulsion in accordance with the provision of TxDOT Item 310, "Prime Coat" prior to the placement of hot mix asphaltic concrete. All concrete bases shall receive a tack coat of asphalt or emulsion in accordance with the provisions of TxDOT Item 300, "Tack Coat" prior to replacement of hot mix asphaltic concrete.
  3. When the replacement pavement is Portland Cement concrete as indicated on the plans, "Class A" Concrete shall be furnished and placed in accordance with TxDOT Item 360, "Concrete Pavement". The concrete shall be placed, spaded, tamped and finished to the line, grade and texture of the surrounding concrete pavement.
  4. Prime Coat and Tack Coat:

- a. Prime and Tack coats shall be applied in accordance with the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications Item 340.
- 5. Surface Course Applications:
  - a. The construction of all surface course shall conform to the applicable requirements of Item 340 of the TxDOT Standard Specifications.

**3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION**

- A. Cleaning
  - 1. After completion of paving operations, clean surfaces of excess or spilled bituminous materials and all foreign matter.
- B. Protect newly finished pavement until it has become properly hardened by cooling.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 1313.10**  
**CONCRETE CURBS, GUTTERS AND SIDEWALKS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Concrete sidewalks, stair steps, curbs and gutters.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- C. Section 32 1123 - Aggregate Base Courses.
- D. Section 32 1250 - Site Pavement.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Sidewalks: By the square foot. Includes preparation of substrate, sand bedding, steel reinforcement, concrete sidewalk, jointing, and finishing.
- B. Concrete Curbs and Gutters: By the linear foot. Includes trenching, steel reinforcement, concrete curb installation, and cleaning.
- C. Stair Steps: By the unit price. Includes preparation of substrate, sand bedding, steel reinforcement, stair steps, jointing, and finishing.

**1.04 REFERENCES**

- A. ASTM D 1190, Concrete Joint Sealer Hot Poured Elastic Type.
- B. ASTM D 994-71 (R1977), Preformed Expansion Joint Filler For Concrete (Bituminous Type).
- C. ASTM D 1751-73 (R1978) Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for concrete Paving Structural Construction.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Samples: Submit for review samples, applicable manufacturer's product data, test reports and material certifications.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detailed Reinforcing Steel Layout.
  - 2. Detailed Construction And Control Joint Layout.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. The testing laboratory shall sample and test concrete in accordance with Section 03 3000 - Cast-In-Place Concrete.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Unless otherwise specified in this Section, all concrete and concrete materials shall conform to TxDOT, Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter and Combined Curb and Gutter" and Item 531 "Sidewalks".
- B. Bituminous Joint Filler: Bituminous type conforming to ASTM D 994 or D 1751 unless otherwise indicated on drawings.

1. Reinforcing steel shall be ASTM A 615 grade 60, deformed and conform to the provisions of TxDOT Standard Specifications, Item No. 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter and Combined Curb and Gutter" and Item 531 "Sidewalks".
2. All reinforcing steel to be new billet steel.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 SUBGRADE PREPARATION**

- A. Preparation of the subgrade including compaction shall be completed two feet (2') beyond the limits of the work:
  1. Where the subgrade is constructed by excavation of existing grade, the top six inches (6") of the subgrade shall be compacted to at least 95 percent of maximum density as determined by TxDOT TEX-113-E at a moisture content between optimum and optimum +4 percent unless otherwise indicated.
  2. The subgrade shall be brought to the final lines and grades utilizing select backfill.
  3. Pit Run Sand or Granular Embedment:
    - a. Pit run sand or granular embedment shall be provided as shown on drawings.
    - b. The material shall be as specified in Section 31 2323 and compacted as specified.

#### **3.02 FORM CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Forms shall be in conformance with TxDOT Standard Specification, Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter and Combined Curb and Gutter" and Item 531 "Sidewalks".
- B. Set forms to line and grade. Install forms over full length of curbs, gutters and sidewalks.

#### **3.03 REINFORCEMENT**

- A. Locate, place, and support reinforcement as specified in TxDOT Standard Specifications, Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter and Combined Curb and Gutter" and Item 531 "Sidewalks", unless otherwise shown on drawings.

#### **3.04 CONCRETE PLACEMENT**

- A. General: Comply with the requirements of TxDOT Standard Specifications, Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter and Combined Curb and Gutter" and Item 531 "Sidewalks".
- B. Machine Formed/Hand Formed:
  1. Automatic curb, gutter and sidewalk machine may be used in lieu of hand formed methods for forming and placing.
  2. Concrete shall have properties as previously specified, except that maximum slump shall be 2-1/2 inches (2 1/2") and air content shall be two percent (2%).
  3. Machine forming shall produce curbs, gutters and sidewalks to the required cross-section, lines, and grades, finish and jointing, as specified for conventionally formed concrete.
  4. Unacceptable work will be removed and replaced at Contractor's expense.

#### **3.05 JOINTS**

- A. General:
  1. Construct expansion, contraction, and construction joints with faces perpendicular to surface of the curb, gutter and sidewalk.
  2. Construct transverse joints at right angles to the work centerline and as shown.
- B. Control Joints:

1. Provide these joints at ten feet (10') on centers for curbs and gutters and five feet (5') on centers for sidewalks.
- C. Construction Joints
  1. Place joints at locations where placement operations are stopped for a period of more than 1/2 hour, except where such pours terminate at expansion joints.
- D. Expansion Joints
  1. Provide 1/2 inch expansion joint filler where work abuts structures; at returns; and at 50-foot spacing for straight runs.
  2. Where gutter and sidewalk are not poured monolithically, provide expansion joints where each abuts the other.
  3. Place top of expansion joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than one inch (1") below concrete surface.
  4. Apply joint sealer on top of expansion joint material flush with concrete surface, and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

**3.06 CONCRETE FINISHING**

- A. Smooth the exposed surface by screeding and floating.
- B. Work edges of gutter and sidewalks, back top edge of curb, and transverse joints; and round to 1/4-inch radius.
- C. Complete surface finishing by drawing a fine-hair broom across surface, perpendicular to line of traffic unless alternative finish is indicated on drawings.

**3.07 CURING**

- A. Protect and cure finished concrete curbs, gutters and sidewalks, complying with applicable requirements of TxDOT Standard Specifications, Item 529, "Concrete Curb, Gutter and Combined Curb and Gutter" and Item 531 "Sidewalks".

**3.08 REPAIR AND CLEANING**

- A. Broken or defective curb, gutters and sidewalks shall be repaired or replaced as directed by the Engineer at the Contractor's expense.
- B. Sweep work and wash free of stains, discolorations, dirt or other foreign material.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 1723.13  
PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Parking lot markings, including parking bays, crosswalks, arrows, handicapped symbols, curb markings, and fire lanes.
- B. Roadway lane markings and crosswalk markings.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 32 1250 - Site Paving.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Parking Lot Striping: By the linear foot. Includes preparation of substrate, painting, clean up.
- B. Roadway Lane Marking: By the linear foot. Includes preparation of substrate, painting, clean up.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. FS TT-P-1952 - Paint, Traffic Black, and Airfield Marking, Waterborne; Rev. E, 2007.
- B. MPI (APL) - Master Painters Institute Approved Products List; Master Painters and Decorators Association; current edition, [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
- C. FHWA MUTCD - Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways; U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration; Current Edition.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS -- NOT APPLICABLE****1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Store paint and materials in manufacturer's containers in a suitable storage facility until use.
- B. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- C. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

**1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Line and Zone Marking Paint: MPI (APL) No. 97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint; color(s) as indicated.
  - 1. Roadway Markings: As required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Parking Lots: Yellow on concrete pavements or white on bituminous pavements or as indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Handicapped Symbols: Blue.
- B. Paint For Obliterating Existing Markings: FS TT-P-1952; black for bituminous pavements, gray for portland cement pavements.



- C. Temporary Marking Tape: Preformed, reflective, pressure sensitive adhesive tape in color(s) required; Contractor is responsible for selection of material of sufficient durability as to perform satisfactorily during period for which its use is required.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Engineer of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Allow new pavement surfaces to cure for a period of not less than 14 days before application of marking materials.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.
- C. Obliteration of existing markings using paint is acceptable in lieu of removal; apply the black paint in as many coats as necessary to completely obliterate the existing markings. Thermoplastic markings must be completely removed by scraping, sandblasting, or mechanical abrasion.
- D. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
  - 1. Remove dust, dirt, and other granular surface deposits by sweeping, blowing with compressed air, rinsing with water, or a combination of these methods.
  - 2. Completely remove rubber deposits, existing paint markings, and other coatings adhering to the pavement, by scraping, wire brushing, sandblasting, mechanical abrasion, or approved chemicals.
  - 3. Sandblasting: Use equipment of sufficient size and capacity.
- E. Where oil or grease are present, scrub affected areas with several applications of an approved detergent or degreaser, and rinse thoroughly after each application; after cleaning, seal oil-soaked areas with cut shellac to prevent bleeding through the new paint.
- F. Establish survey control points to determine locations and dimensions of markings; provide templates to control paint application by type and color at necessary intervals.
- G. Temporary Pavement Markings: When required or directed by Engineer or Owner, apply temporary markings of the color(s), width(s) and length(s) as indicated or directed.
  - 1. After temporary marking has served its purpose, remove temporary marking by carefully controlled sandblasting, approved grinding equipment, or other approved method so that surface to which the marking was applied will not be damaged.
  - 2. At Owner's option, temporary marking tape may be used in lieu of temporary painted marking; remove unsatisfactory tape and replace with painted markings at no additional cost to Owner.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Begin pavement marking as soon as practicable after surface has been cleaned and dried.
- B. Do not apply paint if temperature of surface to be painted or the atmosphere is less than or greater than manufacturer's instructions.

- C. Apply in accordance with manufacturer's instructions using an experienced technician that is thoroughly familiar with equipment, materials, and marking layouts.
- D. Comply with FHWA MUTCD manual (<http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov>) for details not shown.
- E. Apply markings in locations determined by measurement from survey control points; preserve control points until after markings have been accepted.
- F. Apply uniformly painted markings of color(s), lengths, and widths as indicated on drawings true, sharp edges and ends.
  - 1. Apply paint in one coat only or as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Wet Film Thickness: 0.015 inch, minimum.
  - 3. Length Tolerance: Plus or minus 1 inch.
  - 4. Width Tolerance: Plus or minus 1/8 inch.
- G. Roadway Traffic Lanes: Use suitable mobile mechanical equipment that provides constant agitation of paint and travels at controlled speeds.
  - 1. Conduct operations in such a manner that necessary traffic can move without hindrance.
  - 2. Place warning signs at the beginning of the wet line, and at points well in advance of the marking equipment for alerting approaching traffic from both directions. Place small flags or other similarly effective small objects near freshly applied markings at frequent intervals to reduce crossing by traffic.
  - 3. If paint does not dry within expected time, discontinue paint operations until cause of slow drying is determined and corrected.
  - 4. Skip Markings: Synchronize one or more paint "guns" to automatically begin and cut off paint flow; make length of intervals as indicated.
  - 5. Use hand application by pneumatic spray for application of paint in areas where a mobile paint applicator cannot be used.
  - 6. Distribute glass beads uniformly on the paint lines within ten seconds without any waste, applied at rate of 6 pounds per gallon of paint; if the marking equipment does not have a glass bead dispenser, use a separate piece of equipment adjusted and synchronized with the paint applicator; remove and replace markings having faulty distribution of beads.
- H. Parking Lots: Apply parking space lines, entrance and exit arrows, painted curbs, and other markings indicated on drawings.
  - 1. Mark the International Handicapped Symbol at indicated parking spaces.
  - 2. Hand application by pneumatic spray is acceptable.
- I. Symbols: Use a suitable template that will provide a pavement marking with true, sharp edges and ends, of the design and size indicated.

#### **3.04 DRYING, PROTECTION, AND REPLACEMENT**

- A. Protect newly painted markings so that paint is not picked up by tires, smeared, or tracked.
- B. Provide barricades, warning signs, and flags as necessary to prevent traffic crossing newly painted markings.
- C. Allow paint to dry at least the minimum time specified by the applicable paint standard and not less than that recommended by the manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace markings that are applied at less than minimum material rates; deviate from true alignment; exceed length and width tolerances; or show light spots, smears, or other deficiencies or irregularities.

- E. Remove markings in manner to avoid damage to the surface to which the marking was applied, using carefully controlled sand blasting, approved grinding equipment, or other approved method.
- F. Replace removed markings at no additional cost to Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 3113**  
**CHAIN LINK FENCES AND GATES**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Posts, rails, and frames.
- B. Wire fabric.
- C. Barbed wire.
- D. Accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Allowances: See Section 01 2100 - Allowances, for cash allowances affecting this section.
- B. Gates: Measurement and payment by the unit. Includes frame posts, fabric, accessories, hardware.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A121 - Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire; 2013.
- B. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2015.
- C. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2009.
- D. ASTM A392 - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric; 2011a (Reapproved 2017).
- E. ASTM A428/A428M - Standard Test Method for Weight (Mass) of Coating on Aluminum-Coated Iron or Steel Articles; 2010 (Reapproved 2014).
- F. ASTM A491 - Standard Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric; 2011 (Reapproved 2017).
- G. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- H. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2017.
- I. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; 2015.
- J. ASTM F567 - Standard Practice for Installation of Chain-Link Fence; 2014a.
- K. ASTM F668 - Standard Specification for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) and Other Organic Polymer-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric; 2017.
- L. ASTM F1043 - Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework; 2017a.
- M. ASTM F1083 - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures; 2016.

- N. ASTM F1665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride)(PVC) and Other Conforming Organic Polymer-Coated Steel Barbed Wire Used with Chain-Link Fence; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).
- O. CLFMI CLF-SFR0111 - Security Fencing Recommendations; 2014.
- P. FS RR-F-191/1D - Fencing, Wire and Post Metal (Chain-Link Fence Fabric); 1990.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on fabric, posts, accessories, fittings and hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate plan layout, spacing of components, post foundation dimensions, hardware anchorage, and schedule of components. See CLFMI CLF-SFR0111 for planning and design recommendations.
- C. Samples: Submit one sample of fence fabric, slat infill, 12 inch by 12 inch in size illustrating construction and colored finish.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation requirements, post foundation anchor bolt templates.
- E. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of property perimeter posts relative to property lines and easements.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 COMPONENTS**

- A. Line Posts: 1.9 inch diameter.
- B. Corner and Terminal Posts: 2.38 inch diameter.
- C. Fabric: 2 inch diamond mesh interwoven wire, 6 gauge, 0.1920 inch thick, top selvage knuckle end closed, bottom selvage twisted tight.
- D. Tension Wire: 6 gauge, 0.1920 inch thick steel, single strand.
- E. Tie Wire: Aluminum alloy steel wire.

#### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Posts, Rails, and Frames:
- B. Posts, Rails, and Frames: ASTM F 1083 Schedule 40 hot-dipped galvanized steel pipe, welded construction, minimum yield strength of 30 ksi, 50 ksi for sizes NPS 5 and larger.
- C. Line Posts: Type I round in accordance with FS RR-F-191/1D.
- D. Terminal, Corner, Rail, Brace, and Gate Posts: Type I round in accordance with FS RR-F-191/1D.
- E. Wire Fabric:
- F. Wire Fabric: ASTM A 392 zinc coated, ASTM A 491 aluminum coated steel chain link fabric.
- G. Barbed Wire: Aluminum-coated steel, complying with ASTM A 121; 2 strands of 0.099 inch diameter wire, 12.5 gauge, with 4-pointed barbs at 5 inches on centers.
- H. Type specified in Section 03 3000.

**2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Caps: Malleable iron galvanized; sized to post diameter, set screw retainer.
- B. Fittings: Sleeves, bands, clips, rail ends, tension bars, fasteners and fittings; steel.
- C. Extension Arms: Cast steel galvanized, to accommodate 3 strands of barbed wire, single arm, sloped to 45 degrees.
- D. Hardware for Single Swinging Gates: 180 degree hinges, 2 for gates up to 60 inches high, 3 for taller gates; fork latch with gravity drop and padlock hasp; keeper to hold gate in fully open position.
- E. Hardware for Double Swinging Gates: 180 degree hinges, 2 for gates up to 60 inches high, 3 for taller gates; drop bolt on inactive leaf engaging socket stop set in concrete, active leaf latched to inactive leaf preventing raising of drop bolt, padlock hasp; keepers to hold gate in fully open position.
- F. Privacy Slats: Vinyl strips, if required on the drawing, sized to fit fabric weave.

**2.04 FINISHES**

- A. Components (Other than Fabric): Aluminum coated at 0.40 ounces per square foot, when measured in accordance with ASTM A428/A428M.
- B. Components and Fabric: Vinyl coated over coating of 1.8 ounces per square foot galvanizing.
- C. Hardware: Hot-dip galvanized to weight required by ASTM A153/A153M.
- D. Accessories: Same finish as framing.
- E. Color(s): Black, or as shown on drawings.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install framework, fabric, accessories and gates in accordance with ASTM F567.
- B. Place fabric on outside of posts and rails.
- C. Set intermediate, terminal, and gate posts plumb, in concrete footings with top of footing 2 inches above finish grade. Slope top of concrete for water runoff.
- D. Line Post Footing Depth Below Finish Grade: 2 feet.
- E. Corner, Gate and Terminal Post Footing Depth Below Finish Grade: 2 feet.
- F. Brace each gate and corner post to adjacent line post with horizontal center brace rail. Install brace rail one bay from end and gate posts.
- G. Provide top rail through line post tops and splice with 6 inch long rail sleeves.
- H. Install center brace rail on corner gate leaves.
- I. Do not stretch fabric until concrete foundation has cured 2 days.
- J. Stretch fabric between terminal posts or at intervals of 50 feet maximum, whichever is less.
- K. Position bottom of fabric 2 inches above finished grade.
- L. Fasten fabric to top rail, line posts, braces, and bottom tension wire with tie wire at maximum 15 inches on centers.
- M. Attach fabric to end, corner, and gate posts with tension bars and tension bar clips.
- N. Install bottom tension wire stretched taut between terminal posts.

- O. Install support arms sloped outward and attach barbed wire; tension and secure.
- P. Do not attach the hinged side of gate to building wall; provide gate posts.
- Q. Install hardware and gate with fabric to match fence.
- R. Provide concrete center drop to footing depth and drop rod retainers at center of double gate openings.
- S. Ground fence in accordance with State and local standards.

**3.02 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Position: 1/2 inch.
- C. Do not infringe on adjacent property lines.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 9219****SEEDING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Preparation of subsoil.
- B. Placing topsoil.
- C. Seeding, mulching and fertilizer.
- D. Maintenance.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2200 - Grading.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Topsoil:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes topsoil, placing topsoil.
- B. Grassed Areas:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the square yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes preparation of subsoil, preparation of topsoil, placing topsoil, seeding, watering and maintenance for 90 days or until established.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Weeds: Include Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Topsoil samples.
- B. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance instructions, cutting method and maximum grass height; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer.
- C. Maintenance Contract.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver grass seed mixture in sealed containers. Seed in damaged packaging is not acceptable. Deliver seed mixture in containers showing percentage of seed mix, year of production, net weight, date of packaging, and location of packaging.
- B. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 SEED MIXTURE**

- A. Seed Mixture: As determined by the Landscape Architect or Owner.



**2.02 SOIL MATERIALS**

- A. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; pH value of minimum 5.4 and maximum 7.0.

**2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Mulching Material: Hay, oat or wheat straw, free from weeds, foreign matter detrimental to plant life, and dry.
- B. Fertilizer: Recommended for grass, with fifty percent of the elements derived from organic sources; of proportion necessary to eliminate any deficiencies of topsoil, as indicated by analysis.
- C. Water: Clean, fresh and free of substances or matter that could inhibit vigorous growth of grass.
- D. Erosion Fabric: Jute matting, open weave.
- E. Herbicide.
- F. Stakes: Softwood lumber, chisel pointed.
- G. String: Inorganic fiber.
- H. Edging: Galvanized steel.

**2.04 TESTS**

- A. Analyze to ascertain percentage of nitrogen, phosphorus, potash, soluble salt content, organic matter content, and pH value.
- B. Submit minimum 10 oz sample of topsoil proposed. Forward sample to approved testing laboratory in sealed containers to prevent contamination.
- C. Testing is not required if recent tests are available for imported topsoil. Submit these test results to the testing laboratory for approval. Indicate, by test results, information necessary to determine suitability.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that prepared soil base is ready to receive the work of this Section.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with Section 31 2200.
- B. Place topsoil in accordance with Section 31 2200.
- C. Install edging at periphery of seeded areas in straight lines to consistent depth.

**3.03 FERTILIZING**

- A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil and prior to roller compaction.
- C. Do not apply fertilizer at same time or with same machine as will be used to apply seed.
- D. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.
- E. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

**3.04 SEEDING**

- A. Apply seed per seed providers recommendation.
- B. Do not seed areas in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- C. Planting Season: Dependent upon seed species.
- D. Do not sow immediately following rain, when ground is too dry, or during windy periods.
- E. Roll seeded area with roller not exceeding 112 lbs.
- F. Immediately following seeding , apply mulch to a thickness of 1/8 inches. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
- G. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches of soil.
- H. Following germination, immediately re-seed areas without germinated seeds that are larger than 24 by 24 inches.

**3.05 HYDROSEEDING**

- A. Apply seeded slurry per seed providers recommendations.
- B. Do not hydroseed area in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- C. Immediately following seeding, apply mulch to a thickness of 1/8 inches. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
- D. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches of soil.
- E. Following germination, immediately re-seed areas without germinated seeds that are larger than 24 by 24 inches.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Cover seeded slopes where grade is 4 inches per foot or greater with erosion fabric. Roll fabric onto slopes without stretching or pulling.
- B. Lay fabric smoothly on surface, bury top end of each section in 6 inch deep excavated topsoil trench. Provide 12 inch overlap of adjacent rolls. Backfill trench and rake smooth, level with adjacent soil.
- C. Secure outside edges and overlaps at 36 inch intervals with stakes.
- D. Lightly dress slopes with topsoil to ensure close contact between fabric and soil.
- E. At sides of ditches, lay fabric laps in direction of water flow. Lap ends and edges minimum 6 inches.

**3.07 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Provide maintenance at no extra cost to Owner; Owner will pay for water.
- B. Provide a separate maintenance contract for specified maintenance service.
- C. Maintain seeded areas immediately after placement until grass is well established and exhibits a vigorous growing condition.
- D. Mow grass at regular intervals to maintain at a maximum height of 3 inches. Do not cut more than 1/3 of grass blade at any one mowing.
- E. Neatly trim edges and hand clip where necessary.

- F. Immediately remove clippings after mowing and trimming.
- G. Water to prevent grass and soil from drying out.
- H. Roll surface to remove minor depressions or irregularities.
- I. Control growth of weeds. Apply herbicides in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.  
Remedy damage resulting from improper use of herbicides.
- J. Immediately reseed areas that show bare spots.
- K. Protect seeded areas with warning signs during maintenance period.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 9223****SODDING****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Preparation of subsoil.
- B. Placing topsoil.
- C. Fertilizing.
- D. Sod installation.
- E. Maintenance.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2200 - Grading.
- B. Section 31 2323 - Fill.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Topsoil:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the cubic yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes topsoil, placing topsoil.
- B. Sodded Areas:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the square yard.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes preparation of subsoil, preparation of topsoil, placing topsoil, sodding, watering and maintenance.

**1.04 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Weeds: Includes Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lambsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.
- B. Grass: Bermuda, St. Augustine, Buffalo; other acceptable grasses suitable for the region and climate.

**1.05 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. TPI (SPEC) - Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding; 2006.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Certificate: Certify grass species and location of sod source.
- B. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance instructions, cutting method and maximum grass height; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer.

**1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Sod Producer: Company specializing in sod production and harvesting, and certified by the State of Texas.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company approved by the sod producer.

**1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver sod on pallets or in rolls. Protect exposed roots from dehydration.

- B. Do not deliver more sod than can be laid within 48 hours.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Sod: TPI (SPEC), Certified Turfgrass Sod quality; cultivated grass sod; type indicated in plant schedule on Drawings; with strong fibrous root system, free of stones, burned or bare spots; containing no more than 5 weeds per 1000 sq ft. Minimum age of 18 months, with root development that will support its own weight without tearing, when suspended vertically by holding the upper two corners.
1. Thickness: "Thick" sod, minimum 1 inch and maximum 1-3/8 inch topsoil base.
  2. Machine cut sod and load on pallets in accordance with TPI (SPEC) Guidelines.
- B. Topsoil: Fertile, agricultural soil, typical for locality, capable of sustaining vigorous plant growth, taken from drained site; free of subsoil, clay, or impurities, plants, weeds and roots; pH value of minimum 5.4 and maximum 7.0.
- C. Fertilizer: Recommended for grass, with fifty percent of the elements derived from organic sources; of proportion necessary to eliminate any deficiencies of topsoil, to the following proportions unless otherwise indicated:
1. Nitrogen: 16 percent.
  2. Phosphoric Acid: 8 percent.
  3. Soluble Potash: 8 percent.
- D. Water: Clean, fresh and free of substances or matter that could inhibit vigorous growth of grass.

### **2.02 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Wood Pegs: Softwood, sufficient size and length to ensure anchorage of sod on slope.
- B. Wire Mesh: Interwoven hexagonal plastic mesh of 2 inch size.
- C. Edging: Galvanized steel, painted steel.
- D. Herbicide.

### **2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Analyze to ascertain percentage of nitrogen, phosphorus, potash, soluble salt content, organic matter content, and pH value.
- B. Submit minimum 10 oz sample of topsoil proposed. Forward sample to approved testing laboratory in sealed containers to prevent contamination.
- C. Testing is not required if recent tests are available for imported topsoil. Submit these test results to the testing laboratory for approval. Indicate, by test results, information necessary to determine suitability.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that prepared soil base is ready to receive the work of this section.

### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Prepare subgrade in accordance with Section 31 2200.
- B. Place topsoil in accordance with Section 31 2200.
- C. Install edging at periphery of seeded areas in straight lines to consistent depth.

**3.03 FERTILIZING**

- A. Apply fertilizer in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil and prior to installation of sod.
- C. Apply fertilizer no more than 48 hours before laying sod.
- D. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches of topsoil.
- E. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.

**3.04 LAYING SOD**

- A. Moisten prepared surface immediately prior to laying sod.
- B. Lay sod immediately after delivery to site to prevent deterioration.
- C. Lay sod smooth and tight with no open joints visible, and no overlapping; stagger end joints 12 inches minimum. Do not stretch or overlap sod pieces.
- D. Where new sod adjoins existing grass areas, align top surfaces.
- E. Where sod is placed adjacent to hard surfaces, such as curbs, pavements, etc., place top elevation of sod 1/2 inch below top of hard surface.
- F. On slopes 4 inches per foot and steeper, lay sod perpendicular to slope and secure every row with wooden pegs at maximum 2 feet on center. Drive pegs flush with soil portion of sod.
- G. Prior to placing sod, on slopes exceeding 4 inches per foot or where indicated, place wire mesh over topsoil. Securely anchor in place with wood pegs sunk firmly into the ground.
- H. Water sodded areas immediately after installation. Saturate sod to 4 inches of soil.
- I. After sod and soil have dried, roll sodded areas to ensure good bond between sod and soil and to remove minor depressions and irregularities.

**3.05 MAINTENANCE**

- A. Provide maintenance at no extra cost to Owner; Owner will pay for water.
- B. Provide a separate maintenance contract for specified maintenance service.
- C. Provide maintenance of sodded areas for one month from Date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Maintain sodded areas immediately after placement until grass is well established and exhibits a vigorous growing condition.
- E. Mow grass at regular intervals to maintain at a maximum height of 2-1/2 inches. Do not cut more than 1/3 of grass blade at any one mowing.
- F. Neatly trim edges and hand clip where necessary.
- G. Immediately remove clippings after mowing and trimming.
- H. Water to prevent grass and soil from drying out.
- I. Roll surface to remove irregularities.
- J. Control growth of weeds. Apply herbicides in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remedy damage resulting from improper use of herbicides.
- K. Immediately replace sod to areas that show deterioration or bare spots.
- L. Protect sodded areas with warning signs during maintenance period.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 0273****SITE CONCRETE ENCASEMENT, CRADLES, SADDLES AND COLLARS****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. All work required to install and complete all concrete encasements, cradles, saddles and collars.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- B. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.
- C. Section 33 0561 - Concrete Manholes
- D. Section 33 3113 - Site Sanitary Sewerage Gravity Piping.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Encasement, Cradles, Saddles, and Collars: By the cubic yard. Includes formwork, concrete, placement accessories, consolidating and curing.

**1.04 REFERENCES**

- A. Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specification, Item 420 – Concrete for Structures.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's data on manufactured products showing compliance with specified requirements.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation procedures and interface required with adjacent construction for concrete accessories.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. The testing laboratory shall sample and test concrete in accordance with geotechnical report unless otherwise indicated.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MATERIALS**

- A. Concrete: Shall conform to Class B in accordance with Item 420, "Concrete for Structures", TxDOT Standard Specifications.
- B. Reinforcement: If required, shall be Grade 60, deformed bars, new billet steel.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Concrete Encasement
  1. The trench shall be excavated and fine graded to a depth conforming with details and sections shown on the plans.
  2. The pipe shall be securely tied down to prevent flotation and supported by precast concrete blocks of the same strength as the concrete for encasement.
  3. Encasement shall then be placed to a depth and width conforming with details and sections shown on the plans.
- B. Concrete Cradles

1. The trench shall be prepared and the pipe supported in the same manner as described in this Section.
  2. Concrete cradles shall be constructed in accordance with details and sections shown on the plans.
- C. Concrete Saddles
1. Pipe to receive concrete saddle shall be backfilled in accordance with Section 31 2316.13 – Trenching to the spring line.
  2. Concrete placed to a depth and width conforming with details and sections shown on the plans.
- D. Concrete Collars
1. Concrete collars shall be constructed in accordance with details and sections shown on the plans.

**3.02 CLEANING**

- A. Properly dispose of all debris, trash containers, residue, remnants and scraps which result from the work of this Section.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 33 0513.10****SITE CASTINGS****PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Castings shall include labor, materials, equipment and incidentals to construct manhole frames and covers, catch basin inlet frames and grates, trench drain frames and grates, and area drains.
- B. Castings include metal items which are not a part of the miscellaneous metal fabrications or metal systems in other sections of these specifications.

**1.02 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. Section 33 0561 - Concrete Manholes

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Submit Shop Drawings to the Engineer for the fabrication and erection of all casting assemblies. Include plans, elevations, and details of sections and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
  - 2. Include setting drawings for location and installation of castings and anchorage devices.
  - 3. Copies of manufacturer's specifications, load tables, dimension diagrams, anchor details and installation instructions.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Shop Assembly
  - 1. Preassemble items in the shop to the greatest extent possible, so to minimize field splicing and assembly of units at the site. Disassemble units only to the extent necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 MANHOLE FRAMES AND COVERS**

- A. Drainage Manholes
  - 1. Material:
    - a. Cast iron conforming to ASTM A 48, Class 30A.
  - 2. Size:
    - a. As shown on the Drawings.
  - 3. Construction:
    - a. Heavy duty suitable for H-20 loading, with bearing surfaces between frames and covers machined, fitted together, and match marked to prevent rocking.
  - 4. Product and Manufacturer:
    - a. Drainage manhole frames and covers shall be as manufactured by:
      - 1) As shown on plans for type "C" inlet.
      - 2) Alamo Ironworks No. 860-72, or equal, for Junction Box.
- B. Sanitary Sewer Manholes
  - 1. Material:
    - a. Cast iron conforming to ASTM A 48, Class 30.
  - 2. Size:

- a. As shown on the Drawings.
- 3. Construction:
  - a. Heavy duty suitable for H-20 loading, with bearing surfaces between frames and covers machined, fitted together, and match marked to prevent rocking.
- 4. Product and Manufacturer:
  - a. Manhole frames and covers shall be as shown on the Plans, or as manufactured by an approved vendor authorized by the local jurisdictional authority.

## **2.02 CATCH BASIN INLET FRAMES AND GRATES**

- A. Catch Basin Inlets
  - 1. Material:
    - a. Ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 536.
  - 2. Size:
    - a. As shown on the Drawings.
  - 3. Construction:
    - a. Heavy duty suitable for H-20 loading, with machine bearing surfaces.

## **2.03 TRENCH DRAIN FRAMES AND GRATES**

- A. Trench Drain Frames and Grates
  - 1. Material:
    - a. Ductile iron conforming to ASTM A536.
  - 2. Size:
    - a. As shown on the Drawings.
  - 3. Construction:
    - a. Heavy duty suitable for H-20 loading, with machine bearing surfaces.
- B. Trench Drain: As shown on the Plans, or as manufactured by an approved vendor authorized by the local jurisdictional authority.

## **2.04 AREA DRAINS**

- A. Area Drains
  - 1. Material:
    - a. Ductile iron conforming to ASTM A536.
  - 2. Size:
    - a. As shown on the Drawings.
  - 3. Construction:
    - a. Heavy duty suitable for H-20 loading, with machine bearing surfaces.

## **2.05 DESIGN AND FABRICATION**

- A. Design all frames, covers, and grates to prevent rocking and rattling under traffic.
- B. Fabricate castings true to pattern so that component parts fit together.

## **2.06 FINISH**

- A. Shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation, unless shown or specified otherwise.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Follow manufacturer's printed instructions and Shop Drawings.

- B. Set castings accurately to required locations, alignment and elevation, plumb, level, true and free of rack, measured from established lines and levels. Brace temporarily or anchor temporarily in formwork.
- C. Area and planting drains shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 0561  
CONCRETE MANHOLES**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 Section Includes**

- A. Monolithic concrete manholes with masonry transition to lid frame, covers, anchorage, and accessories.
- B. Modular precast concrete manhole sections with tongue-and-groove joints, covers, anchorage, and accessories.

**1.02 Related Requirements**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 04 0511 - Masonry Mortaring and Grouting.

**1.03 Price and Payment Procedures**

- A. Manhole: By the unit. Includes excavating, concrete base pad, concrete manhole sections, FRP manhole sections, brick masonry manhole construction, brick masonry transition to cover frame, cover frame and cover, to indicated depth, forming and sealing pipe inlets and outlets.

**1.04 Reference Standards**

- A. AASHTO HB - Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges; Seventeenth Edition.
- B. ASTM A48/A48M - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings; 2003 (Reapproved 2012).
- C. ASTM C478/C478M - Standard Specification for Circular Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections; 2020.
- D. ASTM C923/C923M - Standard Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures, Pipes, and Laterals; 2020.
- E. ASTM D3753 - Standard Specification for Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Polyester Manholes and Wetwells; 2012.
- F. ACI 530/530.1/ERTA - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures and Related Commentaries; 2011.
- G. Local Municipal Specifications.
- H. Local Public Service Provider Specifications.

**1.05 Submittals**

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate manhole locations, elevations, piping sizes and elevations of penetrations.
- B. Product Data: Provide manhole covers, component construction, features, configuration, and dimensions.

**1.06 Quality Assurance**

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this section.

**1.07 Field Conditions**

- A. Cold and Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with requirements of ACI 530/530.1/ERTA or applicable building code, whichever is more stringent.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 Concrete Manholes**

- A. Weight Rating: H 10 according to AASHTO HB.

**2.02 MANHOLES**

- A. Manhole Sections: Reinforced precast concrete in accordance with ASTM C478/C478M, with resilient connectors complying with ASTM C923/C923M.
- B. Manhole Sections: ASTM D 3753, glass-fiber reinforced polyester (only if indicated on drawings) .
- C. Concrete: As specified in Section 03 3000.
- D. Concrete Reinforcement: As specified in Section 03 3000, Class A.

**2.03 Accessories**

- A. Lid and Frame: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B Cast iron construction, machined flat bearing surface, removable bolted lid, closed lid design; heavy duty suitable for H-20 loading .
- B. Throat Rings: Reinforced concrete rings, maximum thickness of 2 inches, minimum width 5 inches, and internal diameter not less than 30 inches.
- C. Inside Epoxy Coating: Raven 805 Series High Build Epoxy Liner (125 mils thickness) or Spray Wall Polyurethane System (150 mils thickness) or approved equivalent.
- D. Manhole Insert: Rainstopper as manufactured by Southwestern Packing and Seals, or approved equivalent.
- E. Water tight manhole rings and covers shall be Trane-TEX A77 "O" ring or approved equivalent.

**2.04 CONFIGURATION**

- A. Shaft Construction: Concentric with concentric cone top section; lipped male/female dry joints; sleeved to receive pipe sections.
- B. Shape: Cylindrical.
- C. Clear Inside Dimensions: 48 inches diameter.
- D. Design Depth: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Clear Lid Opening: 30 inches diameter.
- F. Pipe Entry: Provide openings as indicated on drawings.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 Examination**

- A. Verify items provided by other sections of work are properly sized and located.
- B. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into Work.
- C. Verify excavation for manholes is correct.

**3.02 Preparation**

- A. Coordinate placement of inlet and outlet pipe or duct sleeves required by other sections.

**3.03 Installation**

- A. Establish elevations and pipe inverts for inlets and outlets as indicated in drawings.

**3.04 MANHOLES**

- A. Place concrete base pad, trowel top surface level.
- B. Place manhole sections plumb and level, trim to correct elevations, anchor to base pad.
- C. Form and place manhole cylinder plumb and level, to correct dimensions and elevations.
- D. Cut and fit for pipe.
- E. The minimum angle of flow for a connecting sewer to the direction of flow by a collection system is 90 degrees.
- F. Inverts shall conform accurately to the size and elevation of the adjoining pipes. Side inverts shall be curved and main inverts, where direction changes, shall be laid out in smooth curves of the longest possible radius which is tangent to the centerlines of adjoining pipelines.
- G. Grout base of shaft sections to achieve slope to exit piping. Trowel smooth. Contour as required.
- H. Set cover frames and covers level without tipping, to correct elevations.
- I. A minimum of 2 and a maximum of 4 throat rings shall be used to adjust the manhole top.
- J. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.
- K. Install manhole inserts in each vented sanitary sewer manhole in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- L. Vacuum test manholes for water tightness.
- M. All new sanitary sewer manholes shall be watertight and coated with an approved sewer structural coating.
  - 1. Epoxy coating: With specified thickness application.
    - a. Raven 405 Series High Build Epoxy Liner: Required thickness 125 mils.
    - b. Spray Wall Polyurethane System: Required thickness 150 mils.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 1416**  
**SITE WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Water pipe for site conveyance lines.
- B. Pipe valves.
- C. Fire hydrants.
- D. Valves, Fire Hydrants, Backflow Preventer, and Accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.
- D. Section 31 2323 - Fill.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Pipe and Fittings: By the linear foot. Includes excavation, pipe and fittings, bedding, thrust blocks, restraint joints, connection to building service piping, and to municipal utility water source.
- B. Valves: By the unit. Includes valve, fittings and accessories.
- C. Hydrant: By the unit. Includes excavation, gravel sump, hydrant, valve, connection, and accessories.
- D. Fittings: By the ton. Includes installation and accessories.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. Standards and specifications of local authority having jurisdiction over private potable water systems.
- B. Standards and specifications of local authority having jurisdiction over public potable water systems.
- C. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; 2012.
- D. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2013.
- E. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2014.
- F. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2015.
- G. ASTM D2466 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40; 2013.
- H. ASTM D2855 - Standard Practice for Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings; 1996 (Reapproved 2010).
- I. ASTM D3139 - Standard Specification for Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes using Flexible Elastomeric Seals; 1998 (Reapproved 2011).
- J. AWS A5.8M/A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; 2011-AMD 1.
- K. AWWA C105/A21.5 - Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems; 2010.

- L. AWWA C111/A21.11 - Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings; 2012.
- M. AWWA C502 - Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants; 2014.
- N. AWWA C504 - Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves 3 In. (75 mm) Through 72 In. (1,800 mm); 2010.
- O. AWWA C508 - Swing-Check Valves for Waterworks Service, 2 In. (50 mm) Through 24 In. (600 mm) NPS; 2011.
- P. AWWA C509 - Resilient-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service; 2009.
- Q. AWWA C600 - Installation of Ductile-Iron Water Mains and Their Appurtenances; 2010.
- R. AWWA C900 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pressure Pipe, 4 In. Through 12 In. (100 mm Through 300 mm), for Water Transmission and Distribution; 2007.
- S. UL 246 - Hydrants for Fire-Protection Service; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves and accessories.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of piping mains, valves, connections, thrust restraints, and invert elevations and provide to the Engineer. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.
- D. Provide Owner with two valve keys for each type of valve.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform Work in accordance with water service purveyor requirements.
- B. Perform Work in accordance with requirements of local authority having jurisdiction of private water systems.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store valves in shipping containers with labeling in place.

#### **1.08 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to applicable code for materials and installation of the Work of this section.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 WATER PIPE**

- A. Ductile Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51:
  - 1. Fittings: Ductile iron, standard thickness.
  - 2. Joints: AWWA C111/A21.11, Styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) or vulcanized SBR gasket with rods.
  - 3. Jackets: AWWA C105/A21.5 polyethylene jacket.
- B. Copper Tubing: ASTM B88, Type K, Annealed:
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper, or ASME B16.22, wrought copper.
  - 2. Joints: Compression connection or AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP silver braze.
- C. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.
  - 1. Fittings: ASTM D2466, PVC.
  - 2. Joints: ASTM D2855, solvent weld.
- D. PVC Pipe greater than 4 inches in diameter: AWWA C900 Class 150:
  - 1. Fittings: AWWA C110, gray iron and ductile iron.



2. Joints: ASTM D3139 compression gasket ring.
- E. Trace Wire: Magnetic detectable conductor, brightly colored plastic covering, imprinted with "Water Service" (14-gauge insulated) in large letters.

## 2.02 VALVES

- A. Valves: Manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body.
- B. All mechanical joint valves shall be supplied with glands, bolts, and gaskets. Bolts for mechanical joints shall be high strength low alloy steel meeting requirements of the latest revision of AWWA Standard C111.
- C. All valves shall open right (clockwise) unless otherwise specified.
- D. Valve ends shall be either flanged, mechanical joint, hub-end, push-on joint ("Ring-Tite"), or any combination thereof.
- E. Valves shall have a minimum 10 YEAR LIMITED WARRANTY from the manufacturer on material and workmanship.
- F. Gate Valves Up To 3 Inches:
  1. Brass or Bronze body, non-rising stem, inside screw, single wedge or disc, compression ends, with control rod, post indicator, valve key, and extension box.
- G. Gate Valves 3 Inches and Over:
  1. AWWA C509, iron body, bronze trim, non-rising stem with square nut, single wedge, resilient seat, flanged ends, control rod, post indicator, valve key, and extension box.
  2. Coatings: All coatings in contact with potable water shall be approved for potable water immersion service per ANSI/NSF Standard 61.
- H. Butterfly Valves From 24 Inches to 48 Inches:
  1. AWWA C504, iron body, bronze disc, resilient replaceable seat, water or lug ends, ten position lever handle.

## 2.03 VALVE BOXES

- A. Each valve box assembly shall be of cast-iron and shall consist of a base, top section, and lid as required by local authority.
- B. All valve boxes shall be of a single size with a nominal diameter of 6 inches.
- C. The valve box lid shall be so designed so that it will remain firmly seated in place when subjected to vehicular traffic.
- D. The valve box assembly shall be coated with a bituminous coating of either coal tar or asphalt base applied to all inside and outside surfaces.

## 2.04 HYDRANTS

- A. Hydrants: AWWA C502, UL 246, dry barrel type or as required by water service purveyor or local authority having jurisdiction of private water systems.
  1. Inside dimension: 7 inches minimum, with minimum 5 inches diameter valve seat opening.
  2. 6 inch bell or mechanical joint inlet connection with accessories, gland bolts, and gaskets.
  3. Open: Right
- B. Hydrant Extensions: Fabricate in multiples of 6 inches with rod and coupling to increase barrel length.

- C. Hose and Streamer Connection: Match sizes with water service purveyor, two hose nozzles with a 2-1/2 inch nominal inside diameter, one pumper nozzle with a 4 inch nominal inside diameter. Nozzle threads to conform with ASA B-26 National Standard Fire Hose Coupling Screw Thread.
- D. Hydrants shall have at least one untapped drain opening. When the main valve is in fully opened position leakage through the drain opening shall be cause for rejection.
- E. All gaskets shall be of rubber composition, copper asbestos, lead or impregnated fiber composition.
- F. All fire hydrants having mechanical joint inlets shall be supplied with glands, bolts, and gaskets. Bolts shall be high strength low alloy steel meeting requirements of AWWA Specification C111.
- G. Hydrant shall have non-rising stems.
- H. Hydrants shall be equipped with a breakable coupling on the barrel section and the stem. These couplings shall be at least two inches above the finished grade line. The breakable coupling shall be so designed that in case of traffic collision, the barrel safety flange and stem safety collar will break before any other part of the hydrant. The coupling shall be designed to afford the hydrant to rotate 360°.
- I. Valve stems shall have a diameter of 1-1/4 inch for hydrants up to and including a 5'-0" bury. Hydrants with a bury of greater than 5'-0" shall have a stem diameter of not less than 1-3/8 inch.
- J. Hydrant shall have a limited warranty from the manufacturer against defects in materials or workmanship for a period of ten (10) years from date of manufacture. Original Manufacturer repair and replacement parts must be used to maintain valid warranty.
- K. Finish: Primer and two coats of enamel in color required by utility company.

## **2.05 BEDDING AND COVER MATERIALS**

- A. Bedding: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.
- B. Cover: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.

## **2.06 REDUCED PRESSURE PRINCIPLE BACKFLOW PREVENTER**

- A. Two check valve assemblies, relief valve assembly, two shutoff valves, and four test codes.
- B. Check Valve and Relief Valve Assemblies: Single cast body with replaceable seats, capable of being serviced independent of each other.
- C. Relief Valve Assembly: Between check valves, supply pressure via a sensing package integral to main body.
- D. Shutoff Valves: Each end of assembly, resilient seated.
- E. Four Test Codes: Supply side of supply shutoff valve, relief valve cover (sensing supply pressure), after first check valve (sensing zone pressure), and after second check valve (sensing demand pressure).
- F. Meet requirements of USC-FCCHR, ASSE 1013, AWWA, UL (2-1/2"-10" models), and FM (2-1/2"-10" models).
- G. Product: Must comply with water service purveyor specifications.

**2.07 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Concrete for Thrust Restraints: Concrete type specified in Section 03 3000.
- B. Permanent and Temporary Blowoff Assemblies: As shown on plans.
  - 1. Permanent Blowoff Assembly: 2-inch galvanized iron pipe, ball valve, fittings, 6-inch valve box assembly, and concrete collar around valve box where subjected to vehicular traffic.
  - 2. Temporary Blowoff Assembly: 2-inch galvanized iron pipe, ball valve, and fittings.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that building service connection and water service purveyor main size, location, and invert are as indicated.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Cut pipe ends square, ream pipe and tube ends to full pipe diameter, remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.
- C. Prepare pipe connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

**3.03 TRENCHING**

- A. See Section 31 2316.13 for additional requirements.
- B. Form and place concrete for pipe thrust restraints at each change of pipe direction. Place concrete to permit full access to pipe and pipe accessories.
- C. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place and compact, then complete backfilling.

**3.04 INSTALLATION - PIPE**

- A. Maintain separation of water main from sewer piping in accordance with Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) requirements. Minimum 9 ft separation when in parallel with sewer piping.
- B. Group piping in the same trench as other site piping work whenever practical.
- C. Establish elevations of buried piping to ensure not less than four (4) feet of cover.
- D. Install ductile iron piping and fittings to AWWA C600.
- E. Route pipe in straight line.
- F. Install pipe to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe or joints.
- G. Install access fittings to permit disinfection of water system performed under Section 33 0110.58.
- H. Slope water pipe and position drains at low points.
- I. Install trace wire taped to pipe, coordinate with Section 31 2316.13.

**3.05 INSTALLATION - VALVES AND HYDRANTS**

- A. Set valves on solid bearing. Concrete pad required for valves 12 inches and larger.
- B. Center and plumb valve box over valve. Set box cover flush with finished grade.
- C. Set hydrants plumb; locate pumper nozzle perpendicular to and facing roadway, no less than 18 inches nor more than 7 feet from face of curb.

- D. Set hydrants to grade, with nozzles at least 20 inches above ground in accordance with Section 21 1100.
- E. Provide a drainage pit 36 inches square by 24 inches deep filled with 2 inches washed gravel. Encase elbow of hydrant in gravel to 6 inches above drain opening. Do not connect drain opening to sewer.
- F. Paint hydrants in accordance with water service purveyor standards and specifications or for private hydrants with standards and specifications of local authority.

**3.06 SERVICE CONNECTIONS**

- A. Provide water service to utility company requirements .

**3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Flush mains to remove all dust, debris, or foreign matter.
- C. Pressure test water piping to 200 pounds per square inch.
- D. Pressure test duration shall be a minimum of 4 hours.
- E. Leakage allowance shall be no greater than listing in table at end of this section.
- F. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest at no cost to Owner.

**HYDROSTATIC TEST LEAKAGE ALLOWANCES (MAXIMUM) @ 200 PSI**  
**ALLOWABLE LEAKAGE IN GALLONS PER HOUR (GPH)\***

NOMINAL DIAMETER & TYPE PIPE	100 LF	200 LF	300 LF	400 LF	500 LF	600 LF	700 LF	800 LF	900 LF	1000 LF
6" DI**	0.13	0.25	0.38	0.51	0.64	0.6	0.89	1.02	1.14	1.27
8" DI**	0.17	0.34	0.51	0.68	0.85	1.02	1.19	1.36	1.53	1.7
12" DI**	0.26	0.51	0.77	1.02	1.28	1.53	1.79	2.04	2.3	2.55
16" DI**	0.34	0.68	1.02	1.36	1.7	2.04	2.38	2.72	3.06	3.4
20" DI**	0.43	0.85	1.28	1.7	2.13	2.55	2.98	3.4	3.83	4.25
20" CSC	0.08	0.16	0.24	0.32	0.4	0.47	0.55	0.63	0.71	0.79
24" DI**	0.51	1.02	1.53	2.04	2.55	3.06	3.57	4.08	3.59	5.1
24" CSC	0.1	0.19	0.29	0.38	0.48	0.57	0.67	0.76	0.86	0.95
30" DI**	0.64	1.27	1.91	2.55	3.19	3.82	4.46	5.1	5.73	6.37
30" CSC	0.12	0.24	0.35	0.47	0.59	0.71	0.83	0.94	1.06	1.18
36" DI**	0.76	1.53	2.29	3.06	3.82	4.58	5.35	6.11	6.88	7.64
36" CSC	0.14	0.28	0.43	0.57	0.71	0.85	0.99	1.14	1.28	1.42
42" DI**	0.89	1.78	2.68	3.57	4.46	5.35	6.24	7.14	8.03	8.92
42" CSC	0.17	0.33	0.5	0.66	0.83	1	1.16	1.33	1.49	1.66
48" DI**	1.02	2.04	3.06	4.08	5.1	6.11	7.13	8.15	9.17	10.1 9
48" CSC	0.19	0.38	0.7	0.76	0.95	1.13	1.32	1.51	1.7	1.89
54" CSC	0.21	0.42	0.63	0.84	1.05	1.26	1.47	1.68	1.89	2.1
60" CSC	0.23	0.46	0.69	0.92	1.15	1.38	1.61	1.84	2.07	2.3

\*PVC pipe shall be tested to DI pressures. GPH for CSC pipe are manufacturer's maximum.

\*\*DI pipe includes mechanical and push-on joints.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 33 3113**  
**SITE SANITARY SEWERAGE GRAVITY PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Sanitary sewerage drainage piping, fittings, and accessories.
- B. Connection of building sanitary drainage system to public sanitary sewers.
- C. Cleanout access.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete for cleanout base pad construction.
- B. Section 31 2316 - Excavation: Excavating of trenches.
- C. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching: Excavating, bedding, and backfilling.
- D. Section 33 0561 - Concrete Manholes.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Bedding: Fill placed under, beside and directly over pipe, prior to subsequent backfill operations.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2015.
- B. ASTM A746 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Gravity Sewer Pipe; 2009 (Reapproved 2014).
- C. ASTM C12 - Standard Practice for Installing Vitrified Clay Pipe Lines; 2014.
- D. ASTM C14 - Standard Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe; 2015.
- E. ASTM C14M - Standard Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe (Metric); 2015.
- F. ASTM C76 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe; 2015.
- G. ASTM C76M - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe (Metric); 2014.
- H. ASTM C425 - Standard Specification for Compression Joints for Vitrified Clay Pipe and Fittings; 2004 (Reapproved 2013).
- I. ASTM C443 - Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets; 2012.
- J. ASTM C443M - Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets (Metric); 2011.
- K. ASTM C564 - Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- L. ASTM C700 - Standard Specification for Vitrified Clay Pipe, Extra Strength, Standard Strength, and Perforated; 2013.
- M. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2015.

- N. ASTM D2321 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications; 2014.
- O. ASTM D2680 - Standard Specification for Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Composite Sewer Piping; 2001 (Reapproved 2014).
- P. ASTM D2729 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2011.
- Q. ASTM D3034 - Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2015.
- R. ASTM D3350 - Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Material; 2012.
- S. AWWA C111/A21.11 - Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings; 2012.

#### **1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the installation of the sanitary sewer with the local authority having jurisdiction for permits and inspections with regard to size, location and installation of service utilities.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers, and local inspection authorities.
- C. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data indicating pipe and pipe accessories.
- B. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- C. Field Quality Control Submittals: Document results of field quality control testing.
- D. Project Record Documents:
  - 1. Record location of pipe runs, connections, manholes, and invert elevations.
  - 2. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 SEWER PIPE MATERIALS**

- A. Provide products that comply with applicable code(s).
- B. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 3034, SDR 26, Type PSM, Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) material, inside nominal diameter as shown on drawings, bell and spigot style joint end with the exception that solvent cement joints shall not be used.
- C. Fittings: Same material as pipe molded or formed to suit pipe size and end design, in required tee, bends, elbows, cleanouts, reducers, traps and other configurations required.

#### **2.02 PIPE ACCESSORIES**

- A. Trace Wire: Magnetic detectable conductor, clear plastic covering, imprinted with "Sewer Service " in large letters, if required.

**2.03 BEDDING AND COVER MATERIALS**

- A. Pipe Bedding Material: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.
- B. Pipe Cover Material: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 GENERAL**

- A. Perform work in accordance with applicable code(s) of local or state jurisdictional authority.

**3.02 TRENCHING**

- A. See Section 31 2316.13 for additional requirements.
- B. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place and compact, then complete backfilling.

**3.03 INSTALLATION - PIPE**

- A. Verify that trench cut is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on layout drawings.
- B. Install pipe, fittings, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Seal watertight.
- C. Lay pipe to slope gradients noted on drawings; with maximum variation from true slope of 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- D. Connect to building sanitary sewer outlet and public sanitary sewer system.
- E. Install cleanouts a minimum of every 100 linear feet unless otherwise indicated on drawings. See drawings for cleanout detail.
- F. Install trace wire 6 inches above top of pipe, if required. Coordinate with Section 31 2316.13.

**3.04 WATER MAIN CROSSINGS**

- A. Requirements of Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, 30 TAC § 217.5 shall be met.

**3.05 INSTALLATION - CLEANOUTS**

- A. Form bottom of excavation clean and smooth to correct elevation.
- B. Establish elevations and pipe inverts for inlets and outlets as indicated.
- C. Mount cap and frame to match slope of finished grade. Secure to top of pipe at elevation indicated.

**3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Perform field inspection and testing.
- B. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest at no cost to Owner.
- C. Pressure Test: Pressure test in accordance with sewer service purveyor standards or local authority having jurisdiction of private sanitary sewer systems.
- D. Deflection Test: Deflection test in accordance with sewer service purveyor or local authority having jurisdiction of private sanitary sewer systems.
- E. Obtain inspections from sewer service purveyor or local authority having jurisdiction. Do not bury pipe until inspection is approved.



**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect pipe and bedding cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation is in progress.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 4211**  
**STORMWATER GRAVITY PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Stormwater drainage piping.
- B. Stormwater pipe accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.
- D. Section 31 2316.14 - Trench Excavation Protection.
- E. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- F. Section 33 0561 - Concrete Manholes.
- G. Section 33 4213 - Pipe Culverts.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Pipe and Fittings:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the linear foot.
  - 2. Basis of Payment: Includes hand trimming excavation, bedding and backfilling, pipe and fittings, connection to building service piping and to municipal system.
- B. Catch Basins and Cleanouts:
  - 1. Basis of Measurement: By the unit.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2015.
- B. ASTM C76 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe; 2015.
- C. ASTM D 667 - Standard Specification for Large Diameter Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings.
- D. ASTM C443 - Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets; 2012.
- E. ASTM C564 - Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- F. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2015.
- G. ASTM D2321 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity-Flow Applications; 2014.
- H. ASTM D2729 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2011.
- I. ASTM F 2648 - Standard Specification for 2 to 60-inch Annular Corrugated Profile Wall Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings.

**1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the installation of storm drains with local authority having jurisdiction for permits and inspections with regard to size, material, location and installation of service utilities.
- B. Preinstallation Meeting: Conduct a preinstallation meeting one week prior to the start of the work of this section; require attendance by all affected installers and local inspection authorities.
- C. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data indicating pipe and pipe accessories .
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures required to install Products specified.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that materials meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Project Record Documents:
  - 1. Record location of pipe runs, connections, and invert elevations.
  - 2. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS****2.01 STORM SEWER PIPE MATERIALS**

- A. Cast Iron Soil Pipe: ASTM A 74, Extra Heavy grade, hub and spigot end.
- B. Concrete Pipe Joint Devices: ASTM C443 (ASTM C443M) rubber compression gasket joint.
- C. Concrete Pipe: Reinforced, ASTM C 76 (ASTM C 76M), Class II with Wall type A; mesh reinforcement; bell and spigot end joints.
- D. Reinforced Concrete Pipe Joint Device: ASTM C443 (ASTM C443M) rubber compression gasket joint.
- E. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2751, SDR 35, Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) material; bell and spigot style solvent sealed joint end.
- F. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 2729, Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) material; bell and spigot style solvent sealed joint end.
- G. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 3034, Type PSM, Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) material; bell and spigot style solvent sealed joint end.
- H. Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40, Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) material; bell and spigot style solvent sealed joint end.
- I. Corrugated Steel Pipe: AASHTO M 36M Type I; helical lock seam; coated inside and out with 0.050 inch thick bituminous coating.
- J. Coupling Bands: Galvanized steel, 0.052 inches thick x 10 inches (250 mm) wide; connected with two neoprene "O" ring gaskets and two galvanized steel bolts.
- K. ADS N-12 WT 1B Pipe: ASTM F 2648; 4 inches to 60 inches High Density Polyethylene; bell and spigot ends with a gasket seal.

**2.02 PIPE ACCESSORIES**

- A. Fittings: Same material as pipe molded or formed to suit pipe size and end design, in required tee, bends, elbows, cleanouts, reducers, traps and other configurations required.
- B. Filter Fabric: Non-biodegradable, woven.

**2.03 CATCH BASIN, TRENCH DRAIN, CLEANOUT, AND AREA DRAIN COMPONENTS**

- A. Lids and Drain Covers: Cast iron.
  - 1. Catch Basin:
    - a. H-20 loaded.
    - b. Nominal Lid and Frame Size: As shown on drawings.
  - 2. Cleanout:
    - a. Lid Design: As shown on drawings.
    - b. H-20 loaded.
    - c. Nominal Lid and Frame Size: As shown on drawings.
  - 3. Area Drain:
    - a. Lid Design: As shown on drawings.
    - b. H-20 loaded.
    - c. Nominal Lid and Frame Size: As shown on drawings.
- B. Trench Drain System: Trench drain system assembled from factory fabricated, concrete castings in standard lengths; with or without built in slope; with integral joints and optional grating support rails; includes grating.
  - 1. Grating Material and Style: Slotted cast iron.
  - 2. Trench Width: As shown on the drawings.
  - 3. Trench Section Length: As shown on the drawings.

**2.04 BEDDING AND COVER MATERIALS**

- A. Bedding: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.
- B. Cover: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.

**PART 3 EXECUTION****3.01 TRENCHING**

- A. See Section 31 2316.13 for additional requirements.
- B. Hand trim excavation for accurate placement of pipe to elevations indicated.
- C. Backfill around sides and to top of pipe with cover fill, tamp in place and compact, then complete backfilling.

**3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Verify that trench cut or excavation base is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on drawings.
- B. Install pipe, fittings, and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Seal watertight.
  - 1. Plastic Pipe: Also comply with ASTM D2321.
- C. Lay pipe to slope gradients noted on layout drawings; with maximum variation from true slope of 1/8 inch in 10 feet.

- D. Connect to building storm drainage system, foundation drainage system, and utility/municipal system.
- E. Make connections through walls through sleeved openings, where provided.

**3.03 INSTALLATION - CATCH BASINS, TRENCH DRAINS AND CLEANOUTS**

- A. Form and place cast-in-place concrete base pad, with provision for storm sewer pipe end sections.

**3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest at no cost to Owner.

**3.05 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect pipe and bedding cover from damage or displacement until backfilling operation is in progress.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 4213  
STORMWATER CULVERTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL****1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Installation of pipe culvert, joints and accessories.
- B. Bedding and slope protection at pipe end.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 31 2316 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.
- D. Section 31 2316.14 - Trench Excavation Protection
- E. Section 31 2323 - Fill.
- F. Section 31 3700 - Riprap.
- G. Section 33 4111 - Site Storm Utility Drainage Piping.
- H. Section 33 4211 - Stormwater Gravity Piping.

**1.03 PRICE AND PAYMENT PROCEDURES**

- A. Pipe Culvert: By the total linear foot invert length of pipe including tapered ends and the diameter in inches. Includes excavating; removing soft subsoil, bedding fill, compacting; pipe, catch basins, junction boxes, fittings and accessories assembled; repair of damaged coating and connection to existing pipe culverts.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A929/A929M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process for Corrugated Steel Pipe; 2001 (Reapproved 2013).
- B. ASTM C14 - Standard Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe; 2015.
- C. ASTM C14M - Standard Specification for Nonreinforced Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe (Metric); 2015.
- D. ASTM C76 - Standard Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe; 2015.
- E. ASTM C443 - Standard Specification for Joints for Concrete Pipe and Manholes, Using Rubber Gaskets; 2012.
- F. ASTM F 2698 - Standard Specification for 2 to 60-inch Annular Corrugated Profile Wall Polyethylene Pipe and Fittings for Land Drainage Applications.

**1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week prior to commencing work of this section.

**1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

- A. Handle all pipe, fittings and accessories carefully with handling devices. Do not drop or roll pipe off trucks. Do not otherwise drop, roll or skid pipe. Chains or cables will not be allowed to load or unload pipe. Materials cracked, gouged, chipped, dented or otherwise damaged will not be allowed for use on the project.

- B. Store pipe and fittings on heavy wood blocking or platforms so they are not in contact with the ground.
- C. Pipe, fittings and specials shall be loaded opposite to or as close to the place where it is to be laid as is practical to avoid unnecessary handling. Interior shall be kept completely free from dirt and foreign matter.
- D. Obtain each type of pipe and fittings from a single manufacturer.

#### **1.07 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on pipe, fittings and accessories.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures required to install Products specified.
- C. Accurately record actual locations of pipe runs, connections, and invert elevations.
- D. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

#### **1.08 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Conform to applicable or municipal code for materials and installation of the work of this section.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 CULVERT PIPE**

- A. Pipe
  - 1. Pipe for culverts shall be of the following types, manufactured in accordance with the requirements of the specifications for each type:
    - a. Corrugated Steel Pipe: Fabricated of ASTM A 929/A 929M galvanized steel sheet:
      - 1) Helical lock seam.
      - 2) Coated inside and out with 0.050 inch thick bituminous coating.
      - 3) Shape: Circular.
      - 4) Tapered Ends: Same material as pipe, machine cut, for joining to pipe end.
      - 5) Coupling Bands: Galvanized steel, 0.052 inches thick x 10 inches wide; connected with two neoprene "O" ring gaskets and two galvanized steel bolts.
    - b. Reinforced Concrete Culvert Pipe: Reinforced concrete culvert pipe shall conform to all requirements of ASTM Standard Specification C-76. The minimum "D-Load" for design of the pipe under Specification C-655, or the selection of pipe class under Specification C-76.
    - c. Polyvinyl Chloride Pipe: Polyvinyl chloride pipe and fittings PVC 1120, conforming to ASTM D1785-76.
    - d. PVC Pipe and Fittings: Standard and perforated PVC pipe and fittings conforming to ASTM D2729 sewer piping or D2665 DWV piping.
    - e. Ductile Iron Pipe and Fittings: Ductile iron pipe and fittings shall conform to all requirements of AWWA C 151 and C 111 and shall be equivalent to a class 150 pipe.
    - f. High Density Polyethylene Pipe (HDPE): High Density Polyethylene double wall pipe and fittings conforming to all requirements of ASTM F 2698; ADS N-12 or equivalent.
- B. Joints

1. Reinforced Concrete Pipe Jointing Materials: Jointing material shall be either a plastic type joint or cement grouted joint. Where cement grouted joints are specified, the Contractor may, at his expense, substitute plastic type joints after review by the Engineer.
  - a. Rubber Gasket Joints: Where rubber gasket pipe joints are required, the joint assembly shall be made according to the recommendations of the gasket manufacturer. Water tight joints will be required when using rubber gaskets.
  - b. Plastic Joints: Plastic joints for reinforced concrete culvert pipe of all kinds shall meet the requirements covered in either Paragraph (13)(b) or Paragraph (13)(d), Section 464.2, of Item 464, "Reinforced Concrete Pipe Culverts", of the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications.
  - c. Cement Mortar Grouted Joints: Pipe joints shall be made with Portland Cement Mortar. All joints of concrete pipe shall be filled with stiff mortar composed of one part Portland Cement and not more than two parts sand. The mortar shall be used within 30 minutes from the time that the ingredients are mixed with water.
  - d. Diaper Bands: Diaper bands shall be placed at every joint when the pipe is laid on a curve. Gauze or cloth fabric bands to hold grout in place at joints shall be made and used as follows:
    - 1) The fabric bands shall be cut into such lengths that they will extend the full circumference of the pipe. The longitudinal edges of fabric bands shall be rolled and stitched around two (2) pieces of wire. The width of the fabric bands shall be such that after being filled with mortar, a band will be formed. The wires shall be cut into such lengths that they pass around the pipe with sufficient extra length for the ends to be twisted at the top of the pipe to hold the fabric securely in place, and shall be accurately centered around the joint.
2. PVC Joints: Materials and methods shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

## **2.02 BEDDING AND COVER MATERIALS**

- A. Bedding: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.
- B. Cover: As specified in Section 31 2316.13.

## **2.03 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Filter Fabric: Non-biodegradable, woven.
- B. Fill at Pipe Ends: Riprap as specified in Section 31 3700.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXCAVATING**

- A. All excavation shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 31 2316.13 and 31 2316.14 except where tunneling or jacking methods are shown on the plans or permitted by the Engineer. The Contractor shall make such temporary provision as may be necessary to insure adequate drainage of the trench and bedding during the construction operation.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION - PIPE**

- A. Verify that trench cut is ready to receive work and excavations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on layout drawings.
- B. Install pipe and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions
- C. Lift or roll pipe into position. Do not drop or drag pipe over prepared bedding.



- D. Shore pipe to required position; retain in place until after compaction of adjacent fills. Ensure pipe remains in correct position and to required slope.
- E. Repair surface damage to pipe protective coating with two coats of compatible bituminous paint coating.
- F. Install culvert end gratings.

### 3.03 JOINTING

- A. Reinforced Concrete Pipe
  - 1. Application of the jointing material and construction methods recommended by the manufacturer shall be strictly adhered to.
  - 2. Rubber Gasket Joints:
    - a. Rubber gasket joints shall be made with materials specifically intended for the purpose intended and installed according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 3. Plastic Joints:
    - a. Plastic joints shall be made with Cold Applied Plastic Asphalt Sewer Joint Compound or Cold Applied Preformed Plastic Gaskets meeting the requirements as set forth earlier in these sections.
  - 4. Mortar Joints:
    - a. All pipe shall be joined tight and sealed with stiff mortar, composed of one part Portland and not more than two parts sand, so placed as to form a durable water tight joint.
    - b. The ends of the pipe shall be cleaned thoroughly and wetted before making the joint.
    - c. After any section of pipe is laid an even layer of mortar shall be thoroughly troweled onto the lower half of the bell or groove of the last laid section.
    - d. Mortar shall be applied to the upper portion of the tongue or spigot of the pipe section being laid. The spigot or tongue end of the next section of pipe shall then be inserted and the joint pulled up tight, taking care that the inner surfaces of the abutting pipe sections are flush and even.
    - e. After the section is laid and uniformly matched and fitted as close as the construction of the pipe will permit, the lower half of the inner circumference of the joints shall be sealed and packed with mortar and finished smooth and even with the adjacent section of pipe.
    - f. Before this mortar has attained initial set, additional mortar then shall be applied from the outside and forced into the unfilled portion of the bell or groove to fill completely the annular space around the spigot or tongue.
    - g. For bell and spigot pipe, a bead shall be formed on the outside by troweling on mortar downward at an angle of 45 degrees from the outer edge of the bell to the spigot of the last laid section.
    - h. For tongue and groove pipe, a bead shall be formed extending at least 1 inch on either side of the joint and of approximately semi-circular cross-section.
    - i. After the initial set, the mortar on the outside shall be protected from air and sun with thoroughly wetted earth or burlap cover or acceptable equivalent, and shall be kept wet for a minimum of 48 hours or until the backfill has been completed. No jointing shall be done when the atmospheric temperature is at or below 40°F, and when necessary, because of a sudden drop in temperature, joints shall be protected against freezing for at least 24 hours.

5. Diaper Bands:
  - a. After diaper bands have been secured in place, grout, composed of one (1) part Portland Cement and not more than two (2) parts sand, shall be poured between the gauze band and the pipe, to insure a thorough sealing of the joint.
  - b. The completed joints shall immediately be protected from the air and sun with proper covering and shall be kept protected for such period as necessary to secure satisfactory curing of the mortar.
  - c. The placing of this type joint shall be kept at least five joints behind the actual laying of the pipe.
  - d. No backfilling around joints shall be done until the joints have cured for a minimum of 24 hours.
- B. PVC Pipe
  1. PVC pipe less than six inches (6") in diameter shall be joined with PVC solvent cement conforming to ASTM D 2564, or manufacturer's recommendations.
  2. PVC pipe six inches (6") in diameter and larger shall be joined with gasket type connections in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.
- C. HDPE Pipe
  1. Shall be joined with gasket type connections in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

**3.04 PIPE ENDS**

- A. Place fill at pipe ends, at embankment slopes.

**3.05 TOLERANCES**

- A. Lay pipe to alignment and slope gradients noted on layout drawings; with maximum variation from true slope of 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- B. Maximum Variation From Intended Elevation of Culvert Invert: 1/4 inch.
- C. Maximum Offset of Pipe From True Alignment: 1 inch.
- D. Maximum Variation in Profile of Structure From Intended Position: 0.25 percent.

**3.06 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect pipe and bedding from damage or displacement until backfilling operation is in progress.

**3.07 BACKFILL**

- A. After the pipe has been placed, bedded, and jointed as specified filling and/or backfilling shall be done in accordance with the requirements of Section 31 2316.13 - Trenching.

**END OF SECTION**